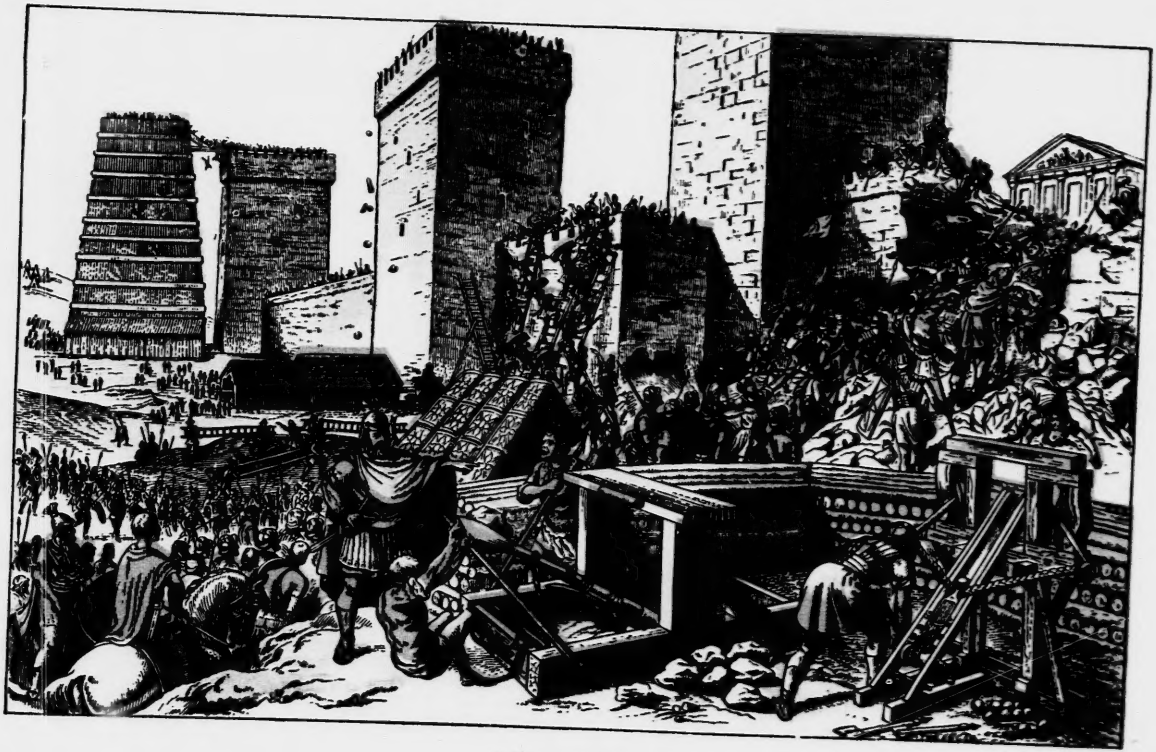
CÆSAR—GALLIC WAR.

BOOKS IV., V.



A Besieged Town.

A Besieged Town.

Morang's Educational Series

CÆSAR—GALLIC WAR

BOOKS IV., V.

BY

ST. J. BASIL WYNNE WILLSON, M.A.

ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;
ASSISTANT-MASTER AT RUGBY SCHOOL;
JOINT-EDITOR OF ÆSCHYLUS, 'PROMETHEUS VINCTUS'

WITH

IMITATIVE EXERCISES

FOR RE-TRANSLATION

BY

W. L. GRANT, M.A.

UPPER CANADA COLLEGE, TORONTO

TORONTO

GEORGE N. MORANG & CO., LIMITED

All Rights reserved

PA 6237
A4
W5

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year 1900, by GEORGE N. MORANG & COMPANY, LIMITED, at the Department of Agriculture.

PREFACE.

In preparing this edition for schools, I have endeavoured to induce the reader to regard his translation as a means of learning Latin prose. If a boy is content with a bald literal translation, he loses half the benefit of reading Cæsar.

I have emphasised this point in a few elementary hints on translation which are undoubtedly trite, but which some years' experience in teaching has shown me to be necessary. As analysis of language is one of the chief purposes of the study of classics, I make no apology for noting small points of syntax, and for dwelling with monotonous reiteration on the uses of the subjunctive.

Instead of giving exercises in an appendix, I have added a list of military and naval phrases, from which the teacher can compile sentences illustrating any construction he chooses.

In the earlier part of the book I have given more minute notes than in the later.

No edition of so well edited an author as Cæsar can claim originality. I have consulted Allen and Greenough, Peskett, Bond, and Walpole, Stock, Rheinhard, Fügner, Kraner, and Moberly.

The first section of the Introduction has been written by my colleague, Mr J. M. Hardwich, who is preparing Books I.-III. in this series, and who will in turn probably make use of some of my work.

I have to thank Mr E. E. Sikes, Fellow and Lecturer of St John's College, Cambridge, for reading the proof-sheets and giving me the advantage of his criticism. Mr Haydon, Head-master of Tettenhall School, has supplied me with some valuable grammatical suggestions.

RUGBY, *Sept.* 1899.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION—	
I. The Celts	vii
II. Britain–	
(*a*) Early mentions of the country	xi
(*b*) Later history	xiii
(*c*) Its inhabitants	xiii
III. Life, works, and character of Cæsar	xiv
IV. The Roman army	xxi
V. Elementary hints on translation	xxvii
TEXT	1
NOTES	66
APPENDICES—	
I. Index of proper names	139
II. Scheme of subjunctive	149
III. Lists of phrases and idioms	150
INDEX (English)	154
" (Latin)	157
IMITATIVE EXERCISES	159
VOCABULARY	

ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.

	PAGE
MAP OF GAUL.	
A BESIEGED TOWN	*Frontispiece*
BUST OF CÆSAR	xx
WEAPONS	xxv
ARRANGEMENT OF COHORTS	xxvii
ROMAN SOLDIERS	xxviii
ROMAN CAMP (PLAN)	81
CÆSAR'S BRIDGE (1)	85
" " (2)	87
ROMAN WARSHIP	90
HARBOUR	93
TORMENTA	96
MAP OF SOUTH BRITAIN	101
ESSEDUM	102
TESTUDO ARIETARIA	110
COWAY STAKE	117
MAP OF ROMAN CAMPS IN GAUL	120
CAMP WITH TOWERS	130
TESTUDO	131

INTRODUCTION.

I.—THE CELTS.

Name and Origin.

The European races of the present day trace their descent from one common stock. The original Aryan family at some prehistoric date broke up into groups, which settled in different parts of Europe, and developed individual national characteristics.[1]

One of these groups was the Celtic. The Celts passed right across to the shores of the Atlantic, and made their way over the Pyrenees into Spain. Much later, finding their present homes too narrow for them, they made various attempts with more or less success to cross the Alps into Italy.

[1] INDO-EUROPEAN (*or* INDO-GERMANIC *or* ARYAN)

Their wanderings were finally checked, and their power broken, by the hero of the Gallic War, Julius Cæsar.

Their name was given variously by the Romans as *Celtae* and *Galli*; and the country, which they occupied so completely that it was named after them, was called *Gallia*. *Gallia Ulterior*, or *Transalpina*, was bounded on the north and west by the English Channel (*Fretum Gallicum*) and the Atlantic (*Oceanus*); on the south by the *Pyrenaei montes*; on the north-east by the Rhine (*Rhenus*), Lake Geneva (*Lemannus lacus*), and part of the Rhone (*Rhodanus*); and on the south-east by a line drawn through the towns of Toulouse (*Tolosa*), Vienne (*Vienna*), and Geneva (*Genava*).

Relations with Rome.

These may be conveniently given in the form of a skeleton outline.

A. *Gallia Cisalpina.*

Invasions across the Alps at an early period resulted in the final occupation of all Italy north of the river Po (*Padus*), hence called *Gallia Cisalpina.*

B.C. 396-350. The Gauls press hard on Etruria and Umbria, even sacking Rome itself in 390. Rome gradually comes to be regarded as the bulwark of Italy against Gallic invasion, and her armies at last are able to hold their own. (Cp. the stories of Torquatus and Corvus.)

B.C. 284-222. Rome occupied in the subjection of the Gauls of N. Italy, who, however, continue to give trouble till, after the completion of the Second Punic War, fresh colonies are founded in the disaffected country.

B. *Gallia Transalpina.*

B.C. 125. The Roman conquest of Transalpine Gaul begun by M. Fulvius Flaccus. *N.B.*—It was most important for Rome to secure the land-route between Italy and Spain.

B.C. 121. A great defeat of the Arverni results in the establishment of the Roman province of Gallia Narbonensis.

B.C. 79-77. The country suffers greatly from the war with Sertorius, and the burden imposed by the presence of the Roman army. *N.B.*—Down to 61 the Roman boundary did not advance. But the province was of great value from its position and the commercial prospects it offered. Consequently it was soon crowded with Roman merchants and farmers; and before long the Celts there became almost entirely Romanised.

Mommsen points out that to this blend of Celt and Roman we may trace the modern French type of character.

The Free Gauls in the Time of Cæsar.

Between the boundaries of Roman Gaul, the sea, and the Rhine lived a great number of Celtic tribes. These differed in many respects, such as language and customs, but had the same religion; and when not at war with one another, they kept up a constant intercourse for purposes of trade. The instinct for trade was one of the most remarkable of the Celtic characteristics. Roads and bridges opened out communication with every part of the country; river navigation was practised to a considerable extent; and the Gauls were among the first people who braved the dangers of the great ocean, and proved the superiority of the sailing

vessel not only for commercial but also for fighting purposes. The merchants of Gaul crossed over into Britain to get the tin for which Cornwall was famous; so that a regular trade-route was established between Britain and Gallia Narbonensis.

The Celts disliked agriculture, and preferred town to country life. We find everywhere towns, surrounded by walls, or undefended villages.

The unit of their organisation was the "clan-canton." In this the supreme power lay with the general assembly of freemen, presided over by its prince, or else by a chief-magistrate (*vergobretus*). This system did not tend towards development or strength; and the only attempt at unification was made by the nobles of different cantons, who gave one another mutual support, in order to secure their own pre-eminence. We can see how the medieval knight grew into being, when we consider such a case as that of Orgetorix, who, to save himself from the sentence of his canton, surrounded himself with 10,000 "members of his family." To this origin may be traced the bands of armed retainers which in feudal times were attached to the service of every powerful knight. Again, the bearing of arms was the qualification of a Celtic citizen, while such occupations as that of agriculture were not regarded as becoming to a gentleman. Military duels of dangerous character were practised even in times of peace; and lastly, the cavalry, recruited from the ranks of the nobility, formed the main strength of the army—the foot-soldier occupying a position comparatively unimportant.

The weapons of the Gauls were chiefly a long lance and a large shield. The army was accompanied by a long train of baggage waggons, which were used in a primitive sort of way to fortify the camp at the end of the march. Though brave, the Gaul was not able to cope with a better disciplined

enemy; and even in point of courage he was inferior to the German.

To the want of unity exhibited by the Celts in their political and military organisation there was one great contrast—the same religion prevailed over the whole people, including those who inhabited the British Isles.

This religion was called Druidism. The Druids, or priests, could claim a distinctly representative national character. They had privileges of their own; they met together at fixed times, and, generally speaking, exercised a strong influence over the people, who obeyed them with unquestioning faith; and they even interfered in civil affairs, putting pressure on the local government, or giving decisions in judicial cases.

(J. M. H.)

II.—BRITAIN.

(*a*) Early Mentions of the Country.

Before Cæsar's invasion little was known of Britain. References in Greek literature are scanty. Herodotus (iii. 115) mentions the Κασσιτερίδες, or Tin Islands, from which the Phœnicians obtained that metal, only to plead ignorance of them; and indeed it is now believed that these islands, of whose whereabouts the Phœnicians maintained such secrecy, were not the Scilly Isles and Cornwall, but islands in the bay of Vigo.

Pytheas, the Greek explorer of Massilia (*Marseilles*), of whose date nothing more definite can be said than that it was before 285 B.C., visited Britain, in the course of an extensive journey in Europe, and published the results obtained in two works, Τὰ περὶ τοῦ Ὠκεανοῦ and Ὁ Περίπλους, from which quotations are made by Strabo and Pliny. He represented Britain as being about 2300 miles in length,

and Kent as being several days' sail from Gaul, and stated that the inhabitants lived on coarse grains, roots, berries, and a liquor concocted from corn and honey.

The first mention of the country[1] in an extant Greek writer before the time of Cæsar is in Polybius (204-122 B.C.), but the book in which he described it has not come down to us.

Of later Greek writers, Diodorus Siculus, a contemporary of Cæsar and Augustus, describes the inhabitants as indigenous, living a simple life in huts of reeds or wood, and mentions the friendliness and comparative civilisation of the people of Cornwall (Βελέριον), who traded in tin with Gaul.

Strabo (54 B.C.–24 A.D.), the geographer, describes the island as being thickly wooded and producing gold, silver, iron, corn, cattle, and slaves, and the men as being taller than the Gauls, badly built, and bandy-legged. Less civilised than the Gauls, they inhabited thickets as towns, and surrounded them with logs of wood. Their climate was rainy and foggy.

Plutarch (born about 80 A.D., date of death unknown), in his Life of Cæsar, Appian (middle of second century A.D.), and Dion Cassius (end of second and beginning of third century A.D.) refer to the invasion of Britain.

Of Latin writers, the poet Lucretius (about 95-52 B.C.) briefly mentions the Britons; Pliny (23-79 A.D.), in his 'Natural History,' supplies considerable information; and Tacitus (61-117 A.D.), in his Life of Agricola, the governor of Britain, gives a full description of the country.

Suetonius (born about 70 A.D.), in his 'Lives of the

[1] (1) The work 'De Mundo,' in which reference is made to Britain, which has generally been ascribed to Aristotle (384-322 B.C.), is now believed not to be his, and is assigned to a much later period.

(2) In Greek Britain is called ἡ Βρετ(τ)ανία, ἡ Βρετανικὴ (sc. νῆσος), αἱ Βρεττανικαὶ νῆσοι, Ἄλβιον, Ἀλουίων; also Πρεττανία.

Cæsars'—a writer not wholly trustworthy—misrepresents the object of Cæsar's expedition to Britain as being greed for pearls; whereas Cicero, whose brother Quintus was with Cæsar, asserts in a letter (*ad Fam.* vii. 7) that there was no chance of booty in Britain.

(*b*) Later History.

After Cæsar's departure from Britain in 54 B.C., no attempt was made to occupy the country till the reign of Claudius (43 A.D.) Then the region south of the Thames was permanently brought under Roman sway. The work of conquest was carried on in 61, during the reign of Nero, by Suetonius Paulinus who subdued the revolt of Boadicea, and was completed by Agricola (78-84 A.D.) The Roman occupation of the island lasted till 407 A.D., when, on the decline of Roman power and the inroad of the Picts and Scots, all troops were withdrawn.

(*c*) Its Inhabitants.

The earliest inhabitants of Britain were dark-haired people of the Iberian stock, of whom traces may still be seen in Cornwall, Wales, and Scotland. In Cornwall the people, who are popularly believed to be descendants of Spaniards that came over in the Armada, are probably of this race. The Iberians gave way before Celts (Gaels) from Gaul, and they in their turn were succeeded by migrations of other Celts called Brythons from Belgium. This accounts for the resemblance that Cæsar noticed between the inhabitants of Britain and Gaul, and the existence of similar names in both countries—*e.g.*, Atrebates, Parisii, Belgæ.

For a description of the condition of the inhabitants at this time, Cæsar's own account will suffice.

III.—LIFE, WORKS, AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

Caius Julius Cæsar was born July 12, 100 B.C., six years after the birth both of Cicero and Pompey. He was closely connected with the democratic party by his sympathies as well as by his aunt's marriage with Marius, the great chief of the party. In 83 he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cinna, who had succeeded to the leadership of the popular party on the death of Marius. Sulla, the leader of the *Optimates*, on his return from the war in the East against Mithridates became master of Rome, and showed his distrust of the young democrat by bidding him put away his wife. Cæsar refused, and with difficulty escaped death by flying from Rome. By dint of hard intercession his friends obtained his pardon from Sulla, who remarked "that that boy would be the ruin of the aristocracy, for there was many a Marius in him." He returned to Rome, but, feeling insecure, went to Asia, where he had his first experience of campaigning, and served with distinction, winning the "civic crown" for saving a comrade's life at the capture of Mytilene.

In 78 B.C. Sulla died, and Cæsar returned to Rome, where in the following year he gained a great reputation as an orator by his prosecution of Cn. Dolabella for extortion in his government of Macedonia.

Pursuing the study of oratory, he set out to become a pupil of Apollonius Molo at Rhodes, but on his way was captured by Cilician pirates. He was ransomed by his friends for fifty talents (£10,000), and immediately obtaining some vessels at Miletus, fell upon his captors in the island of Pharmacusa, off the Carian coast, whilst they were dividing the spoil, carried them off to Pergamus, and crucified them, thereby fulfilling a threat which he had made to them in sport whilst

he was in their power. This done, he proceeded to Rhodes, but soon returned to Rome, bent on championing the popular party and winning the people's favour, an object which he achieved by lavish expenditure, regardless of accumulating debt.

He rapidly rose up the ladder of office. In 68 B.C. he was *quæstor*; in 65, ædile, winning popularity by the munificence of his shows; in 63, *pontifex maximus*. In that year Cicero crushed the conspiracy of Catiline, in which, on insufficient grounds, Cæsar was suspected of complicity. He may have sympathised with the movement no doubt, but he took no active part in it. In 62 he was *prætor*, and incurred the undying hostility of Cato by strenuous opposition to him. In 61 and the following year he went to Hispania Ulterior as *proprætor*, where he conquered the Lusitanians.

Meanwhile, between 70-60 B.C., Pompey purged the Mediterranean of pirates, broke the power of Mithridates, pacified the East, and returned to Rome at the head of a devoted army. The supremacy that Cæsar afterwards gained was within Pompey's reach, but he had not the nerve to make the final effort and grasp it. By constant trimming he had lost the confidence of both parties.

Consequently, when in 60 Cæsar returned to Rome, he found Pompey with all the possibilities of power, but isolated and forceless. Unlike Pompey, Cæsar never failed to grasp an opportunity. He entered into a coalition with Pompey and Crassus, the wealthy leader of the *Equites* or merchant class, and this First Triumvirate, as the coalition is called, was strong enough to defy all opposition. It was agreed by these three masters of the Roman world that Pompey should have the land he wanted for his veteran soldiers, that Crassus should obtain easier terms for the *Equites* in the matter of tax-farming, and that Cæsar should get the consulate for 59 B.C.

As *consul* in that year Cæsar passed measures putting the terms of this agreement into effect. On the motion of a tribune Vatinius (*Lex Vatinia*), he was granted the provinces of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, with three legions, for five years. The Senate added Transalpine Gaul and another legion. Cæsar's object was now obtained. He foresaw the conflict that was imminent in the State; and in view of it, it was necessary that he should have an army trained by himself and devoted to his interests.

In 58 he entered on his provincial command.

The task that lay before him was that of securing Italy from attack in the north. For centuries Gallic invasions had been the great danger to the State. Up to this time only the southern part of Transalpine Gaul was known to the Romans. Stretching from the Alps to the Pyrenees lay Gallia Narbonensis, the only Roman province at this time in Transalpine Gaul, and hence called by Cæsar *Provincia*, or The Province (*Provence*). The following is a summary of his operations in Gaul:—

Bk. I. **58 B.C.** The peace of the Province was threatened by a movement among the Helvetii, a people occupying Switzerland, who, finding their confines cramped, wished to migrate to Western Gaul in a body, under Orgetorix. Cæsar saw the danger of letting so large a mass of people traverse the Province, and drove them back with great slaughter. The great battle took place at Bibracte (*Autun*). He then turned his attention to Ariovistus (see Index of Names), a German chief who had crossed the Rhine, and defeated him.

Bk. II. **57 B.C.** The scene of action is now transferred to Belgium in the N.E., where Cæsar crushed a strong combination of tribes under the powerful Nervii, whom he almost exterminated in a desperate battle. He also reduces towns on the coast of Brittany to submission.

Bk. III. **56 B.C.** The campaign of this year was for the most part directed against the Veneti, a tribe on the coast of Brittany, who were the head of the states known as the *Civitates Aremoricae*. It was chiefly a naval campaign.

Bk. IV. **55 B.C.** The Usipetes and Tencteri, German tribes, under pressure from the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine and settled in the territory of the Menapii, and were encouraged by the Belgic Gauls. Cæsar refused their request to be allowed to remain, the main point of his policy being to keep the Germans on their own side of the Rhine, but offered them a settlement in the territory of the Ubii. A second embassy, asking for time to consider this proposal, he detained, an action which is open to criticism. Instead of the three days which they asked for, he granted them twenty-four hours, mistrusting the object of their request. During this time a strong force of 5000 German cavalry fell upon 800 cavalry of Cæsar's advance-guard, and he, not sorry to find a pretext for hostilities, marched rapidly upon the main body, who were unprepared for action, and massacred them, not sparing the women and children. Wishing to create an impression of his power in Germany, he hastily built a bridge across the Rhine and showed himself in German territory.

Then followed his first invasion of Britain, which was rather a visit of exploration than an attempt at conquest.

Bk. V. **54 B.C.** In the winter Cæsar built a fleet for the second invasion of Britain, and assembled it at Portus Itius (*Boulogne*). Before starting, he decided to support Cingetorix, in his struggle for the chieftainship of the Treveri, against Indutiomarus, and captured and killed Dumnorix the Hæduan, who refused to accompany him to Britain, and was fomenting disaffection. Crossing to Britain, he met with most opposition from Cassivellaunus, over-lord of the tribes north of the Thames. After the capture of his "town" (*St Albans*) he submitted, and the opposition of the Britons

collapsed. Cæsar could not remain to secure his conquest, but hurried back to Gaul.

He distributed his winter camps widely over Northern Gaul, as is related in ch. xxiv. The Eburones, under Ambiorix, attacked the camp of Sabinus and Cotta, and practically annihilated fifteen cohorts. The example of the Eburones was followed by the Nervii, who assaulted the camp of Cicero, but without the same success; for he held out sturdily till relieved by Cæsar. Unsuccessful, too, was an attack of the Treveri, under Indutiomarus, on Labienus. "After this," says Cæsar, "Gaul was a little quieter."

Bk. VI. **53 B.C.** Cæsar crossed the Rhine and conducted another brief campaign against the Germans, and pacified Northern Gaul.

Bk. VII. **52 B.C.** Vercingetorix, head of a confederacy in the south, fostered a general rising, but after a stubborn resistance was compelled to surrender.

Bk. VIII. (written by Hirtius, Cæsar's friend and confidant). **51 B.C.** A general pacification of Gaul.

The rest of Cæsar's life must be briefly told. During the Gallic War his relations with Pompey, who from a growing fear of his increasing power was trying in every way to thwart him, were becoming more and more strained, and in 49 he crossed the Rubicon and the Civil War began. Pompey fled to Greece, and was defeated at Pharsalus, 48 B.C. He escaped to Alexandria, where he was assassinated. The hopes of the Pompeian or Senatorial party were finally crushed at Thapsus in Africa (46 B.C.) and Munda in Spain (45 B.C.) From this time Cæsar was dictator—emperor in all but name. In 44 B.C. he was murdered by several friends—amongst them Marcus and Decimus Brutus, and C. Cassius. His murder was the last protest against autocracy.

Cæsar was one of the most versatile men that ever lived. He had many sides to his character, and in every sphere of

life he achieved pre-eminent success. As a general he ranks among the greatest of the world's history. With a keen eye to the necessities of a situation, he never lost a chance, and always struck his blow with dexterity and swiftness. His task in Gaul was a very arduous one, against strenuous foes —no effete Asiatics, like those of Alexander—and attended with great engineering difficulties—the building of bridges, fleets, and the fortification or the capture of towns—all of which he encountered with consummate skill. He was a commander whose mere presence aroused enthusiasm and confidence, and whose personality commanded the devotion of his staff and troops. Labienus alone failed him.

As a statesman he was the foremost of his day—tactful, resourceful, conciliatory. Opponents like Cicero, who disliked his political principles, had an almost undisguised regard for the man. Sturdy old bigots like Cato alone he failed to win over. Though not emperor in name, he paved the way for the imperial power of Augustus, and his supremacy was achieved with the minimum of civil bloodshed. No reign of terror attended his predominancy in Rome such as had disgraced the power of Marius and Sulla.

As a man of letters he has left work that lives as a standard of clear, forceful, military history. His extant works are—

1. The *Commentarii de Bello Gallico*[1] in eight books, the eighth being composed by Aulus Hirtius. The work, as the name implies, was not intended by Cæsar as an elaborate history, but rather as material for a fuller work. Yet as Cicero[2] (*Brutus*, § 262) says, "in wishing that

[1] *Commentarii*. The meaning of this word is (1) "notebook"; (2) "sketch," "memoirs." It is an adjective—*sc.*, *libri*; Greek, ἐφημερίδες.

[2] Stock's *Cæsar*, Introduction, p. 13.

others who meant to write history might have matter at hand to take from, he has perhaps conferred a favour upon fools who may try to curl and crimp the bare beauty of his style; but he has deterred men of sense from writing, for there is nothing more delightful in historical composition than a plain and luminous brevity."

It is uncertain whether Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of his operations piecemeal, or whether he composed the whole at one time. Probably they were written concurrently with events and published as a whole. The probable date is 50 B.C., though all that is known for certain is that they were published before 46 B.C., as Cicero refers to them in his *Brutus*.

2. *Commentarii de Bello Civili.* Three books. A history of the war with Pompey and his followers up to the beginning of the Alexandrine War. The histories of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish wars were probably not written by Cæsar, but by Hirtius.

His lost writings include—

1. *De Analogia*, a treatise on Latin Grammar, written whilst he was crossing the Alps.

2. *Libri Auspiciorum.*

3. *De Astris.*

4. *Apophthegmata*, a collection of *bon-mots.*

5. *Poemata*, consisting of *Laudes Herculis*, and *Œdipus*, a tragedy.

This list shows his versatility as a writer. As an orator he was esteemed next to Cicero.

Thus Cæsar was general, statesman, historian, poet, scholar, mathematician, engineer.

To discuss his personal character would be impossible here. It can only be briefly summed up. In appearance he was distinguished—tall, fair, with dark keen eyes, and bald. Of his dress he was very careful, almost to dandyism. He

have matter at
ed a favour upon
are beauty of his
from writing, for
rical composition

Commentaries in
whether he com-
hey were written
s a whole. The
known for certain
as Cicero refers to

books. A history
up to the begin-
ries of the Alex-
ere probably not

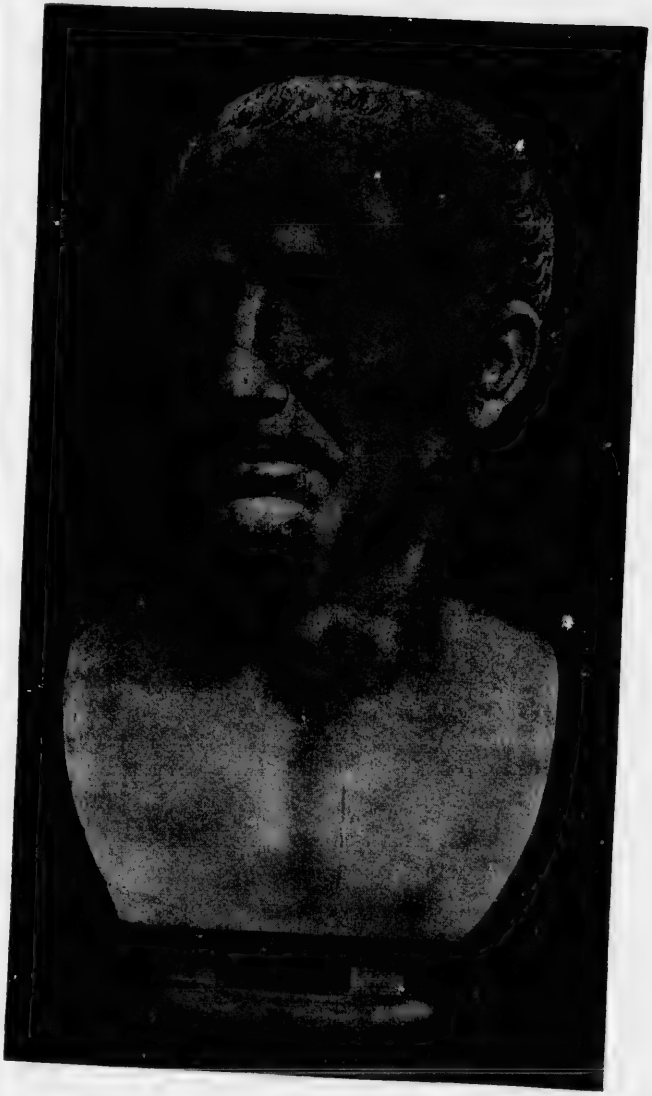
Grammar, written

ots.
alis, and *Œdipus*,

er. As an orator

rian, poet, scholar,

be impossible here.
appearance he was
n eyes, and bald.
o dandyism. He



JULIUS CÆSAR.

possessed great physical energy, and was a skilful horseman and swimmer, with great powers of endurance.

Fired with high ambition, he let nothing stand in the way of his advancement, with the result that his lavish expenditure left him constantly in debt. He possessed a great power of winning affection and inspiring devotion among friends and subordinates. In humanity he was in advance of an age which knew little mercy. Towards barbarians he was ruthless[1] if policy demanded severe measures, but merciful if expediency allowed. Always careful of his troops, and interested in their welfare and comfort, he had no difficulty in winning their enthusiastic affection. Loyalty he rewarded, and of small faults he was tolerant; but treachery he punished with terrible swiftness.

With such powers and such qualities he forms wellnigh the most interesting figure in history, appealing with special force to Englishmen, whose history he began.

IV.—THE ROMAN ARMY.

The constitution of the Roman army as it was in the time of Cæsar dated from the beginning of the first century (106-102 B.C.), when Marius remodelled it, abolishing the old property qualification and the division of the legion into three lines — *Hastati*,[2] *Principes*, and *Triarii* or *Pilani*. He also did away with the *velites*—who were previously included in the legion—armed all the legionaries with the pilum, and made the cohort the tactical unit in place of the maniple.

[1] *E.g.*, in his treatment of the Usipetes and Tencteri, and of Dumnorix.

[2] These names still survived in the regulation of the order of precedence amongst the centurions. See note on p. xxiv.

The **Legion** was constituted as follows:—

Two centuries (*prior* and *posterior*) made one maniple	120 men
Three maniples made a cohort .	360 "
Ten cohorts made a legion . .	3600 "

If a century included 100 men, the full legion would have numbered 6000, but probably (there is considerable variation of authority and opinion on this question) under Cæsar it contained on an average 60 men, making the normal strength of a legion 3600.

The cohorts took precedence according to their number, the first being the chief.

Besides the legionary soldiers there were—

The **Cavalry,** consisting of foreign troops—Gauls, Spaniards, Germans. The division was as follows:—

Three *decuriae* made one *turma* .	33 men
Ten *turmae* made one *ala* . .	330 "

The **Auxiliaries,** also consisting of foreign troops, levied or enlisted from the provinces, or contributed by subject states. Slingers (*funditores*) came from the Balearic Isles; archers (*sagittarii*) from Crete and Numidia. These were called *milites levis armaturae*, *levis armatura*, or simply *leves*, and displaced the *velites* which, in pre-Marian days, had been attached to the legion. These were also called *alarii*, as they were posted on the wing (*ala*). *N.B.*—Both the cavalry and the auxiliaries were branches of the service distinct from the legionaries.

The **Engineers** or *fabri*, under a *praefectus fabrum.*

Officers.

These were—

1. The **Dux,** or commander-in-chief, who, according to custom, received the title of **Imperator** after his first victory. Cæsar was so hailed after his success over the Helvetii.

2. The **Legati,** who formed the commander's "staff." They were men of senatorial rank, and were assigned to the imperator by the Senate. Cæsar had ten. Under his authority they commanded the various armies, and took his place in his absence.

3. The **Quaestores,** or paymasters, who were annually elected by the people in the *comitia centuriata,* and assigned, one to each commander, by lot. Their duties were to administer the finances of the province, to supervise the soldiers' pay, equipment, clothing, lodging, &c. Occasionally, in the absence of the *imperator* and *legatus,* they took the command. Cæsar's quæstor was M. Crassus.

4. The **Tribuni Militum,** six to each legion, of equestrian rank, partly appointed by the commander, partly elected. In earlier times they had control of the legion, but under Cæsar their powers were considerably curtailed, and they merely formed a channel of communication between the superior and the lower officers, and assisted the *quæstor* in his administrative duties. They also took part in councils of war and judicial proceedings. They were generally young men of family, "cadets" of great houses.

The **Praefecti**—also of equestrian rank. This term was loosely applied to the commanders of auxiliary cohorts, who were not necessarily Romans.

The **Centurions,** or sergeants, of plebeian rank. One was in command of each century. They were, like the lower officers, men of experience, influence, and courage. To them the wonderful efficiency of the legion was mainly

due. They ranked according to the cohorts. The six centurions of the first cohort were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*,[1] and were admitted to the councils of war. The chief was the centurion of the *centuria prior*, of the first maniple of the first cohort, and was called *primipilaris*, or *primus*, or *primipilus*.[2] He had charge of the eagle, though it was actually carried by an *aquilifer*.

The centurion's symbol of authority was a staff of vine-wood (*vitis*).

Also attached to the army there were *exploratores*, scouts (in bodies); *speculatores*, individual spies; *mercatores*, traders; *lixæ*, sutlers; *calones*, camp-followers, servants, grooms, drivers.

Dress and Armour.

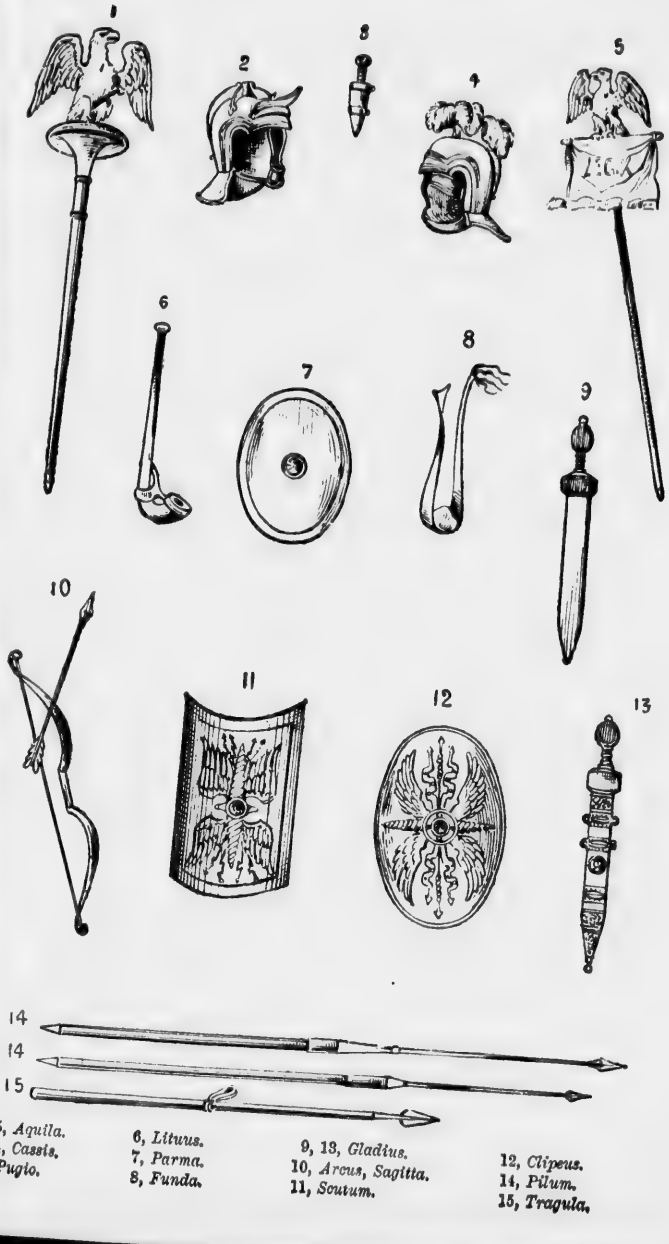
The ordinary soldier (*miles manipularis* or *gregarius*) wore a tight sleeveless tunic (*tunica*), fastened by a belt (*cingulum*) round his waist, and over this a *lorica* of leather or mail. On his head he wore a leathern helmet (*galea*) with a removable badge (*insigne*). The cavalry helmet (*cassis*) was metal. On his right side, suspended by a *balteus* or belt, he

[1] Called in brief *primi ordines*.

[2] Distinguish between *pilum*, the weapon, and *pilus*, the division.

The centurion of each legion had rank according to the precedence of the century and maniple to which he was attached. Of the two centuries in a maniple, the *centuria prior* ranked above the *centuria posterior*. In denoting the order of the thirty maniples of each legion, the old names for *Triarii* (or *Pilani*), *Principes*, *Hastati* (in this order of precedence) were used. Hence the names of the sixty centurions were as follows:—

Triarii	1st.	*Primipilaris.*
	2nd-10th.	*Secundus, tertius*, &c., to *decimus, pilus prior.*
	11th-20th.	*Primus*, &c., to *decimus, pilus posterior.*
Principes	21st-30th.	*Primus*, &c., to *decimus, princeps prior.*
	31st-40th.	*Primus*, &c., to *decimus, princeps posterior.*
Hastati	41st-50th.	*Primus*, &c., to *decimus, hastatus prior.*
	51st-60th.	*Primus*, &c., to *decimus, hastatus posterior.*



1, 5, *Aquila.*
2, 4, *Cassis.*
3, *Pugio.*
6, *Lituus.*
7, *Parma.*
8, *Funda.*
9, 13, *Gladius.*
10, *Arcus, Sagitta.*
11, *Scutum.*
12, *Clipeus.*
14, *Pilum.*
15, *Tragula.*

carried a short sword (*gladius*), two feet long, adapted for stabbing rather than slashing, and on his left arm a curved oblong shield (*scutum*), four feet by two, made of wood, linen, and leather, with an iron rim and a metal boss (*umbo*). The outside was adorned with a device, such as a winged thunderbolt.

He also carried a *pilum* or "spear" six or seven feet long, with a wooden shaft, and barbed iron head weighing about three pounds, and capable of being hurled 100 feet. His right leg was guarded by a greave (*ocrea*), and his feet covered with heavy boots (*caligæ*).

His private "kit" (*sarcina*) he carried tied on a forked pole invented by Marius, and called *mulus marianus*.

Standards.

General term *signa*. That of the legion was an eagle (*aquila*) of metal on a wooden pole in charge of the *primipilus*, but carried by the *aquilifer*. It might have a small banner attached, inscribed with the designation of the legion.

The standard of the cohort was called specially *signum*, that of the cavalry, *vexillum*.

Order of Battle.

Each legion was usually drawn up in three lines (*triplex acies*), arranged like the figure ⁘ on a die (*in quincuncem*), four cohorts in the front rank and three each in the second and third. The three maniples of each cohort stood side by side, and the two centuries of each maniple the one behind the other. As soon as the trumpet sounded the charge was made, the men first hurling their *pila* and then closing with their short swords. When the front line was wearied, the second marched through the gaps in front

and took its place. The third was kept in reserve in case of the failure of the other two. On the wings were the

Arrangement of cohorts.

auxiliaries and cavalry, ready to pursue the enemy when routed by the legionaries.

V.—ELEMENTARY HINTS ON TRANSLATION.

It may not be out of place to add a few words on the manner and method of translation. Several years' experience of form-work tells me how needful such hints are, however trite and obvious they may seem.

1. Above all, realise that Cæsar is a great historian, writing **consecutive sense,** and not a series of Latin sentences to be used by modern school-boys as a Delectus. As you read, think of what he is talking about: unless you do this, you cannot possibly translate. Never read without realising the narrative or following the train of thought.

2. When you have made out the drift of a passage, put it into English words that an English writer might use. Avoid '*translationese*,' a jargon which always makes *fides*, "faith"; *res*, "a thing" or "affair"; *gerere*, "wage"; *certior factus*, "having been made more certain," &c.

3. Translate from **Latin idiom** into **English idiom,** and then you will learn to do idiomatic Latin prose, the reverse process; *e.g.*, *quibus auditis Caesar*, NOT "which things

having been heard, Cæsar," BUT, "Cæsar, hearing this." Thereby you will avoid *Caesar, audiens haec* in your own Latin prose; *urbem captam incendit*, NOT "he burnt the captured city," BUT "he took and burnt the city."

4. Always read a chapter **straight through** once, making out as much as you can of it. Then return and translate carefully. You will thus get the drift of the passage. If you cannot make out the meaning of one sentence, go on to the next: it will very likely explain it.

5. Notice the **order.** Much of the force of Latin prose lies in this. It is not a Chinese puzzle, or a jumble of words arranged in kaleidoscopic patterns.

6. Be careful of *et.* Whenever you see it, look to see whether it means "and," "also," or "even." So with *quod*, either the relative or "because."

7. Never pass a **subjunctive** without finding out why the mood is used. Do not think "may" and "might" will translate every subjunctive.

8. Always read the Latin with a view to translating English into Latin. Store up a **vocabulary** gradually by trying to remember each new word.

9. Be careful of the **relative.** Whenever it comes first word in a sentence, look on to the end carefully to see whether it is a real relative introducing a subordinate clause, with the principal verb following—*e.g.*, *quae ab illo accepi, (illa) ad te mittam*, "I will send you what I have received"; or whether it is merely the very common *connective relative*, equivalent to *et is, ea, id*, &c., often introducing the principal sentence—*e.g.*, *qua re nuntiata discedunt*, where *qua* = *et ea.*

1. Slinger. 2. Light-armed soldier. 3. Soldier of the legion. 4. A soldier's kit.
5. Signiferi. 6. Bucinator. 7. Tubicen. 8. Vexillum. 9. Aquila.

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, hard pressed by the Suebi, cross the Rhine—Manners and customs of the Suebi.

Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cnaeo Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agri cultura prohibebantur.

Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt; hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco colendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi

genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, quod a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina adsuefacti nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciunt, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pellis haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

CHAPTER II.

Manners and customs—*Continued.*

Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, importatis non utuntur, sed, quae sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio adsuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum omnino ad se importari non patiuntur, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

CHAPTER III.

Boundary policy of Suebi—Their relations with the Ubii.

Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum nu-

merum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter milia passuum centum agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum; ii paulo, quanquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt ceteris humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus adsuefacti. Hos cum Suebi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

CHAPTER IV.

The Usipetes and Tencteri surprise and overcome the Menapii, and settle in their country.

In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus; qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt, ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt, quas regiones Menapii incolebant. Hi ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis adventu perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverant et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis

navibusque eorum occupatis, prius quam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

CHAPTER V.

Cæsar, knowing the unstable and fickle character of the Gauls, determines not to trust them.

His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quid quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogat. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio paenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

CHAPTER VI.

His suspicions are realised—The Gauls invite further advance of the Usipetes and Tencteri—He conceals his mistrust, and summons a council of Gallic chieftains—Determines to make war on the encroaching Germans.

Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit:

missas legationes ab non nullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent: omnia, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius iam vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

CHAPTER VII.

He is met by a deputation from the Germans, who proffer friendship if allowed to remain in Gaul, but are ready to fight if refused.

Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab iis venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eiectos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint: sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne di quidem immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

CHAPTER VIII.

Cæsar answers that he cannot allow them to remain in Gaul, but will let them settle in the territory of the Ubii.

1 Ad haec, quae visum est, Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis; Sibi nullam cum iis amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare 5 agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

CHAPTER IX.

The envoys ask two days for consideration—Cæsar, knowing that this request is made merely to allow time for their cavalry to join them, refuses it.

1 Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros; interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim, magnam partem 5 equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam: hos exspectari equites atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

CHAPTER X.

Description of the Meuse and Rhine.

1 Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur

Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum, neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur et, ubi Oceano adpropinquavit, in plures diffluit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur,—ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur,—multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

CHAPTER XI.

Cæsar advances—More parleying and requests for delay—Cæsar is suspicious, but orders his cavalry to abstain from hostilities.

Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecisset, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius milibus passuum IV aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

CHAPTER XII.

The German cavalry treacherously attack the Romans, and rout them—Heroism of Piso and his brother.

1 At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus 5 nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus his resistentibus, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossisque equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque 10 ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur IV et LXX, in his vir fortissimus Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus a senatu nostro appella- 15 tus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus 20 obtulit atque interfectus est.

CHAPTER XIII.

Cæsar decides on prompt and vigorous action—A large and influential deputation arrives from the Germans to apologise for the treachery—Cæsar detains them and advances.

1 Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per

dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent; exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat, et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti, sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et simulatione et perfidia usi Germani frequentes omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, purgandi sui causa, quod contra, atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus illos retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

CHAPTER XIV.

The Germans, surprised, offer but little resistance—Cæsar sends cavalry in pursuit of the women and children.

Acie triplici instituta et celeriter VIII milium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra inruperunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque

inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

CHAPTER XV.

The Germans are slain or drowned—Bloodless victory of the Romans—Cæsar offers to allow the deputation that he had detained to depart, but they prefer to remain.

1 Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX milium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

CHAPTER XVI.

Cæsar determines to cross the Rhine into Germany—His reasons: (a) non-compliance of the Sugambri with his demands; (b) urgent request from the Ubii for aid against the Suebi.

1 Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam

venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent, et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus rei publicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possent. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

CHAPTER XVII.

Description of Cæsar's bridge across the Rhine.

Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque

fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum ab imo praeacuta dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis intervallo pedum duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo derecto ad perpendiculum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent, iis item contraria duo ad eundem modum iuncta intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius inligata tenerentur. Haec derecta materia iniecta contexebantur ac longuriis cratibusque consternebantur; ac nihilo setius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim fluminis exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris immissae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Cæsar leads his army across—Deputations arrive from many states seeking peace and friendship—Retreat of the Sugambri.

1 Diebus x, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati

veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. At Sugambri ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

CHAPTER XIX.

Cæsar devastates their country—Learns from the Ubii that the Sugambri in their forest retreat are determined to offer desperate resistance—But having accomplished the objects for which he crossed the Rhine, recrosses it and destroys the bridge.

Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in fines Ubiorum recepit atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si a Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, postea-quam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent; hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibidem decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino XVIII trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

CHAPTER XX.

Cæsar determines to invade Britain—His reasons: (a) because help had come thence to the Gauls; (b) desire to explore unknown regions.

Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

CHAPTER XXI.

Cæsar sends Volusenus on to explore—Assembles fleet and army at the coast of the Morini—Envoys come from Britain offering submission—Cæsar sends them back with generous promises and with them Commius—Volusenus returns and reports.

Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam

primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat classem, iubet convenire. Interim consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renuntiat.

CHAPTER XXII.

The Morini apologise and submit—Cæsar's arrangements before crossing.

Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa morat-ur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque

has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco a militibus passuum VIII vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, a quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Cæsar reaches the British coast in advance of his cavalry transports—Finds the cliffs lined with the enemy—Waits for the other vessels—Instructs his officers on the nature of their task—Reaches an open beach.

His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus anguste mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex

Volusenо cognovisset et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Opposition of the natives to his landing—Difficulties of the Romans.

At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum pressis simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela coicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant, utebantur.

CHAPTER XXV.

Cæsar's tactics—Bravery of a standard-bearer.

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expeditior,

paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac submoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, obtestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, *Desilite*, inquit, *commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certè meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.* Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus adpropinquarunt.

CHAPTER XXVI.

A hard struggle—Danger of the Romans—At last they effect a landing.

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se adgregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fece-

runt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Submission of the Britons—They apologise for their treatment of Commius—Cæsar answers graciously—More tribes submit.

Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt, obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset, facturos sese polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant; tum proelio facto remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

The eighteen cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.

His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demon-

stratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum adpropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno suo cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

CHAPTER XXIX.

Further disasters to Cæsar's ships—The Roman troops in a dangerous position.

Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quas in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas adflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod omnibus constabat, hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

CHAPTER XXX.

The critical position of the Romans tempts the British chieftains to conspire to renew hostilities.

Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proe- 1
lium ad Caesarem conuenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum et equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar 5
legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim 10
ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

CHAPTER XXXI.

Cæsar suspects their designs and prepares to meet them.

At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen 1
et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat et, quae gravissime adflictae 5
erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comparari iubebat. Itaque, cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, XII navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

10

CHAPTER XXXII.

The Britons make a sudden attack on the seventh legion whilst foraging—Cæsar to the rescue.

Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiaverunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar, id quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela coici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes, huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

British use of war-chariots.

Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coiciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio

excedunt atque ita currus conlocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

Cæsar relieves his hard-pressed troops and retires—The Britons gain confidence and approach the Roman camp.

Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui, discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Defeat and pursuit of the Britons.

Caesar etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effuge-

rent, tamen nactus equites circiter XXX, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Their submission—Cæsar's terms—He sets sail—Safe arrival in Gaul—Two transports separated from the rest.

Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem portus, quos reliquae, capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

The two detached transports are suddenly attacked by the Morini—Help sent by Cæsar—Defeat and flight of the enemy.

Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si

sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia VI convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis IV fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Subjugation of the Morini and Menapii.

Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno erant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum XX supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

BOOK V.

CHAPTER I.

Cæsar goes to Italy—Has a fleet built—Goes to Illyricum—Deals with the Pirustæ.

1 L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitas adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania adportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrent omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem

adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

CHAPTER II.

Cæsar returns to Gaul, January 54 B.C.—Finds fleet built—Orders it to assemble at Portus Itius—Marches into the territory of the Treveri.

His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sescentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas XXVIII invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Conlaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum XXX a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, relinquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis IV et equitibus DCCC in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

CHAPTER III.

Struggle for the chieftainship among the Treveri between Indutiomarus and Cingetorix—Indutiomarus makes a false submission.

Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra

demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit, quaeque in Treveris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed postea quam non nulli principes ex ea civitate, et auctoritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque civitatem in sua potestate esse seque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, et suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

CHAPTER IV.

Cæsar demands hostages from Indutiomarus, but supports Cingetorix—Disgust of Indutiomarus.

Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus rebus ad Britannicum bellum comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen

setius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius ab se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomarus suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

CHAPTER V.

All assemble at Portus Itius.

His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, LX naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero milia quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

CHAPTER VI.

Episode of Dumnorix the Hæduan—His refusal to accompany Cæsar to Britain—His disaffection.

Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, de quo ante a nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Haeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi

a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, ius iurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

CHAPTER VII.

Flight and death of Dumnorix.

Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Haeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coërcendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter xxv in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen setius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum

discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar intermissa profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille autem revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se libcraeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Haedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

CHAPTER VIII.

Labienus left in Gaul—Cæsar, with five legions and cavalry, sets sail for Britain—Natives, in alarm, retreat from the coast.

His rebus gestis, Labieno in continenti cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rei frumentariae provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti relinquebat, ad solis occasum naves solvit; et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, mul-

titudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi causa fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

CHAPTER IX.

The Roman army lands and advances against the natives—Crosses a river in spite of resistance—Captures a forest stronghold.

Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, ei praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa iam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod magna parte diei consumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

CHAPTER X.

Great damage to the fleet from a storm.

Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves adflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque sustinerent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim tempestatis pati possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

CHAPTER XI.

Cæsar returns to the coast—Takes energetic measures to remedy the disaster to the fleet, and returns—Cassivellaunus is elected by the Britons as commander-in-chief.

His rebus cognitis Cæsar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas possit iis legionibus, quae sint apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies X consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie

munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus relinquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno, cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

CHAPTER XII.

Customs of Britain—Resources of the island.

Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsa memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio transierunt—qui omnes fere isdem nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt—et bello inlato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

CHAPTER XIII.

Geographical description of the British Isles.

Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Gal- 1
liam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves adpelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter milia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem 5
solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia insula, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores obiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis non nulli scripserunt, 10
dies continuos XXX sub brumam esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, DCC milium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta 15
terra, sed eius angulus alter maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

CHAPTER XIV.

Superior civilisation of Kent—Customs of the Britons.

Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium in- 1
colunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit 5
colorem, atque hoc horribiliores sunt in pugna aspectu; capil-

loque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed, qui sunt ex iis nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

CHAPTER XV.

Fight on march with the Britons, who are repulsed. Renewed attack on the Romans, who are taken unawares—At last the enemy are driven off.

Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, ita tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti non nullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris conlocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum eae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus tribunus militum interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

CHAPTER XVI.

Their mode of fighting.

Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem

armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

CHAPTER XVII.

The Britons again routed.

Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Cæsar forces a passage of the Thames.

1 Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias 5 hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixisque munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite 10 solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

CHAPTER XIX.

Cassivellaunus' harassing tactics.

1 Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus 5 sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros effunderet, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostro- 10 rum equitum cum his confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine

legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

CHAPTER XX.

Submission of the Trinovantes.

Interim Trinovantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem venerat—cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat—legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; [illegible]unt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in [illegible]itatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

CHAPTER XXI.

Submission of other tribes—A British "town". Cassivellaunus' "town" stormed.

Trinovantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis

hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

CHAPTER XXII.

Cassivellaunus urges the four Kentish kings to attack the naval camp — The attack is foiled — Cassivellaunus, disheartened, submits.

Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinovantibus noceat.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Cæsar returns to Gaul.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et non nullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites conlocavit ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Owing to scarcity of corn, Cæsar distributes his forces widely in winter quarters.

Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis conlocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam C. Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Ciceroni, tertiam in Esuvios L. Roscio; quartam in Remis cum T. Labieno in

confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit; tres in Bellovacis conlocavit; his M. Crassum et L. Munatium Plancum et C. Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes v in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae rei frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam L. Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones conlocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

CHAPTER XXV.

Murder of Tasgetius the Carnutian, a friendly chief, by his fellow-tribesmen—L. Plancus sent to winter there.

Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem inimici palam multis ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

CHAPTER XXVI.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus—They attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta—The Gauls ask for a parley.

Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnanda venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad conloquium prodiret: habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

CHAPTER XXVII.

Ambiorix makes a false show of friendship, representing himself as an unwilling agent in the hands of his people, and treacherously advises Sabinus and Cotta to join the camp of Cicero or Labienus, offering them a safe passage.

Mittitur ad eos conloquendi causa C. Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Q. Titurii, et Q. Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consuerat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius opera stipendio liberatus esset, quod Atuatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fra-

tris filius a Caesare remissi essent, quos Atuatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eius modi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alteri legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et iure iurando confirmare, tutum se iter per suos fines daturum. Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

The Romans debate the question—Cotta speaks strongly against Ambiorix' proposal.

1 Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierant, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, tamen

non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos existit controversia. L. Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus inlatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

CHAPTER XXIX.

Sabinus is strongly in favour of going whilst there is the chance.

Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem se arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiundi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos. Sese non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris extincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa spe Ambiorigem ad eius modi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset

durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

CHAPTER XXX.

In answer to the strong opposition of Cotta and his party, Sabinus adds a few hot words, throwing all the responsibility of remaining on Cotta, and appeals to the soldiers.

Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, *Vincite*, inquit, *si ita vultis*, Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; *neque is sum*, inquit, *qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent: qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe a ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.*

CHAPTER XXXI.

The soldiers try to restore harmony between their leaders—Cotta gives way—Preparations for departure.

Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronun-

tiatur, prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

CHAPTER XXXII.

The Romans are caught in an ambush.

At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, conlocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum exspectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

Sabinus loses his head—Coolness and energy of Cotta—He orders the men to form into a circle, which turns out to be a great mistake.

Tum demum Titurius qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec posse in itinere

accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat: et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis non facile per se omnia obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eius modi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode cecidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quaeque quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

The battle—Bravery of the Romans and skill of Ambiorix.

At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnandi pares. Nostri tametsi ab duce et a Fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coiciant neu propius accedant, et quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant: levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil his noceri posse; rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Brave but futile efforts of the Romans—Cotta wounded.

Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipere. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum T. Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur; Q. Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

Sabinus seeks an interview with Ambiorix to ask for terms, but Cotta refuses to accompany him.

His rebus permotus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum conloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum sal-

utem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una conloquantur: sperare, se ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Treacherous murder of Sabinus—The Romans are attacked and routed—Cotta dies fighting—The rest retreat to the camp and then in despair kill themselves—A few escape to Labienus.

Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proicit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; nocte ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Ambiorix, elated with his victory, stirs up other tribes to rebellion.

Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Atuatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque se subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Atuatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Several tribes make a sudden attack on Q. Cicero's camp.

Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas possunt manus, cogunt et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Tituri morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut non nulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Atuatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

CHAPTER XL.

Cicero takes energetic measures for defence.

Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim a Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. A nostris eadem ratione, qua pridie, resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valitudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

CHAPTER XLI.

The Nervii offer Cicero terms, which he sturdily refuses.

Tum duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, conloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab iis praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus

diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis per se incolumibus ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare se pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

CHAPTER XLII.

The Nervii invest the camp.

Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum X et fossa pedum XV hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine a nobis cognoverant et quosdam de exercitu nacti captivos ab his docebantur; sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae essent ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis caespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cogebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum XV in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt. Reliquis diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

CHAPTER XLIII.

A critical day for the Romans—The camp is set on fire and fiercely attacked, but they resist stubbornly.

Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusiles ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas,

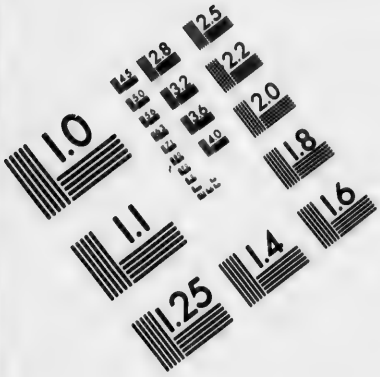
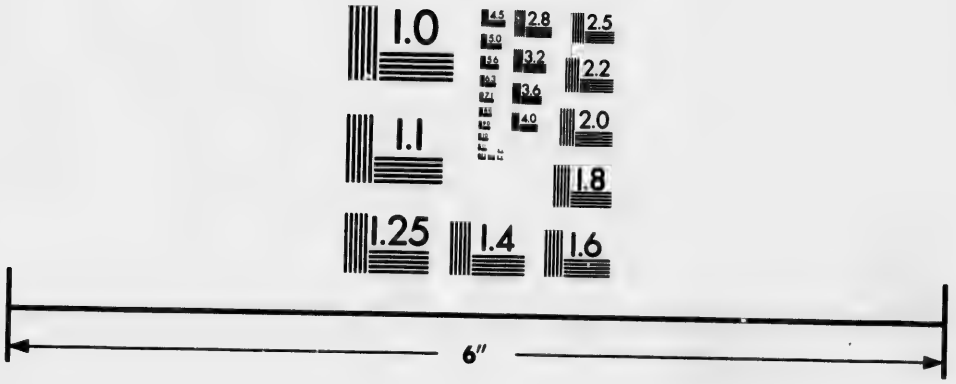
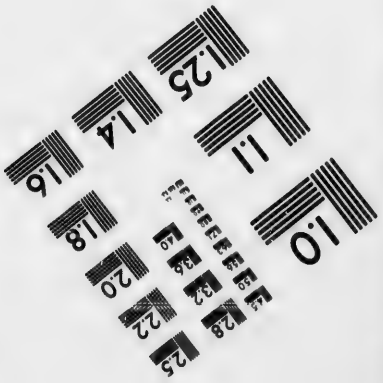


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

CHAPTER XLIV.

Emulation in bravery of two centurions, Pullo and Vorenus.

Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui iam primis ordinibus adpropinquarent, T. Pullo et L. Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, uter alteri anteferretur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pullo, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, *Quid dubitas*, inquit, *Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.* Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra muni-

tiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, inrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese tum vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pullo pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et examinato, hunc scutis protegunt hostes, in illum universi tela coniciunt neque dant progrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulloni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pullone omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur. Gladio comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento subsidium fert Pullo, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

CHAPTER XLV.

The means adopted of conveying to Cæsar the critical condition of Cicero.

Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime, quod magna parte militum confecta vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur, quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei

fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo inligatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

CHAPTER XLVI.

Cæsar sends messages to his legati to join him in going to the relief of Cicero.

Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum XXV; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat. Scribit Labieno, si rei publicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat expectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

CHAPTER XLVII.

Crassus arrives at Samarobriva, and on his approach Cæsar sets out—Fabius joins him en route—Labienus deems it advisable not to stir.

Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus eo die milia passuum XX progreditur. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionemque si attribuit; quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa devexerat,

relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, cum omnes ad eum Trevirorum copiae venissent, veritus, ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit; docet, omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Trevirorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

Cæsar makes a forced march to the relief—Manages to communicate with Cicero—Joy in the camp.

Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas reciderat, tamen unum communi saluti auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistulam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta epistula nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistula ad amentum deligata intra munitiones castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque a nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum

recitat maximaque omnes laetitia adficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

CHAPTER XLIX.

The Gauls raise the siege and turn to meet Cæsar—Cicero warns him of his danger—Cæsar, by contracting his camp, deludes the enemy into underestimating his force.

Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia LX. Cicero data facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar adlatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat: considit et, quam aequissimo potest loco, castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere vallem transiri possit.

CHAPTER L.

Cavalry skirmishes—Cæsar feigns fear in order to entice the enemy to fight on the spot of his own choosing.

Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sese suo loco continent: Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, expectabant, Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

CHAPTER LI.

The Gauls fall into the trap and attack the camp—Cæsar sallies and routs them.

Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coiciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omni-

bus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo, magnamque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

CHAPTER LII.

Cæsar abstains from pursuit and reaches the camp of Cicero—He learns the history of the defence, and congratulates the heroes of it.

1 Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; producta legione cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque conlaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo neque hostibus diutina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

CHAPTER LIII.

News of Cæsar's victory reaches Labienus—Indutiomarus abandons his contemplated attack on him—On account of the disturbed condition of Gaul, Cæsar determines to winter there.

Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama ad Treveros perlata Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae extiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni tertiae decimae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas copias earum civitatum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse neque longius milibus passuum octo ab hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio adlato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

CHAPTER LIV.

Cæsar's efforts to stay the spread of disaffection—The Senones expel the king he had established—Scarcely a state can be relied upon except the Haedui and Remi - Reflections.

1 At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis alios territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, denuntiaret, alios cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas in primis firma et magnae inter 5 Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad 10 Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Ac tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Haeduos et Remos, quos 15 praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod qui virtute belli 20 omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut populi Romani imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

CHAPTER LV.

Indutiomarus aggressive—His intrigues.

1 Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent,

civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

CHAPTER LVI.

He is joined by other tribes, and holds an armed council—Determines to attack Labienus.

Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Atuatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli: quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire coguntur; qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

CHAPTER LVII.

Labienus makes cautious preparations.

Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat, ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias conloquendi aut territandi causa; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coiciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

CHAPTER LVIII.

Indutiomarus, beguiled into despising his enemy, attacks the camp—He is routed and slain—Pacific effect on Gaul.

Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coiciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus

portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis — quod fore, sient accidit, videbat — unum omnes petant Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium Fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

NOTES.[1]

BOOK IV.

Chapter I.

1. **Ea hieme**, abl. of time, "when."

qui. The pronoun is attracted into agreement in gender with the predicate: cf. Bk. v. ch. xlix. 2, and contrast Bk. v. ch. xl. 18.

annus, 55 B.C.

2. **Germani** an adjective.

3. **transierunt**. Cæsar almost invariably uses this form of the 3rd plur. perf. act., and very seldom the alternative form in *-ere*.

4. **non longe — influit**, "not far from the mouth of the Rhine."

quo. Latin is essentially an accurate language. Here **quo**, "whither," is used, and not *ubi*, "where," because of the idea of motion in **influit**.

causa, nom., "the reason of their crossing was that . . ." When *causa* in abl. is used as a preposition, it always follows its case.

5. **complures annos**, acc. of duration of time.

bello. In Latin, ideas are expressed very definitely. In English we should merely say "hard pressed." So "pain" = *dolor corporis* (*mentis*), "nature" = *natura rerum*, "crushed" (heart-broken) = *fractus animo*: defining words being used in Latin.

6. **agri cultura**, abl. of separation.

8. **Hi**, the Suebi.

[1] For all Proper Names, see Index of Names. Unless the number of the Book is stated, the reference is to the Book in which the note occurs.

8. **centum pagos.** Tacitus describes the Semnones, a section of the Suebi, as being divided into a hundred "cantons" (*Germ.*, ch. xxxix.) The division probably took place in each fresh settlement.

9. **quotannis**, sometimes written in two words. It is a shortened expression for the full "*tot annis quot sunt*"; cf. *quot mensibus*, "every month."

singula milia, distributive, "a thousand each year."

10. **reliqui——remanent.** Horace gives the same account of the Scythians—

> *Nec cultura placet longior annua,*
> *Defunctumque laboribus*
> *Aequali recreat sorte vicarius.*
>
> —*Od.* iii. 24.

manserunt. The perf. and pluperf. indicative are used with *cum*, *si*, *ubi*, *quoties*, of iterative or repeated action in primary and secondary sequence respectively.

11. **in vicem**, "in turn"; distributive use of *in*; cf. Bk. v. ch. xxx. 1.

12. **ratio atque usus**, "science and practice." The two nouns form one idea, contrasted with **agri cultura**. Hence **atque**, and not *nec*, and the singular verb **intermittitur**.

13. **agri**, partitive gen., dependent on **nihil**. We might say "private landed property."

15. **maximam partem**, "for the most part"; adverbial accusative, variously classed under acc. of extent and acc. of reference or respect; cf. **multum** in the same sentence. Similar uses of the acc. are *cetera*, "as for the rest"; *id temporis*, "at that time"; *id genus*, "of that kind"; *secus virile*, *muliebre*, "of the male" or "female sex." See L. P.,[1] § 213.

lacte atque pecore, abl. of means.

16. **res**, "this fact." Beware of translating "*res*" always by "thing" or "affair." It is a general word constantly used where we should employ a special term. It takes its meaning from the context. It has been compared to a blank cheque to be filled in at pleasure. "Considerations," "circumstances," "aim," "juncture," "result," are common meanings that it bears.

17. **genere——faciunt**, "owing to their diet, daily exercise, and freedom of life (for from boyhood, not having been schooled by duty and training, they do nothing at all against their will)"; the cum clause is explanatory of **libertate vitae**.

18. **a pueris**, so in Greek, ἐκ παίδων, "from boys."

[1] L. P. refers to Kennedy's Revised Latin Primer.

19. **immani . . . magnitudine**, abl. of description or quality; like the similar genitive, never used without an epithet or the equivalent of an epithet. The phrase here is predicative.

20. **Atque**, "and further," introduces a new and important fact or idea.

eam se consuetudinem. In English, when we wish to emphasise words, we are sometimes compelled to resort to the clumsy method of italics. In Latin, emphasis is effectively given by order. A very common way is to take some unimportant word like *est*, *se*, *esse*, *is*, &c., and place it between words which naturally go together. Here **se**, by its position between **eam** and **consuetudinem**, adds emphasis to them. Examples are very numerous: *e.g.* below, **magna est corporis pars**; ch. iii. 9, *Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti*; ch. v. 9, *de summis sæpe rebus*. Trans.: "they have so thoroughly inured themselves."

21. **locis frigidissimis**, abl. abs. with concessive sense, "though the climate be extremely cold."

neque . . . et, "not . . . and besides"; cf. ch. xxix. 11.

vestitus, partitive gen. with **quicquam**.

22. **haberent . . . lavarentur**, irregular sequence after **adduxerunt**, which clearly here has a perfect and not an aorist force; *habeant . . . laventur* would have been more natural. The probable explanation of this and any similar irregularity is that as the Latin perfect so constantly had an aorist force, the imperf. subjunct. was used after it occasionally, when it had its strictly perfect meaning.

CHAPTER II.

1. **Mercatoribus——desiderent.** "Access (or perhaps 'an open door') is granted to traders rather with a view to having purchasers (or a 'market') for the booty they have taken in war than from a desire of any import trade."

quae . . . quibus, supply as antecedents *ea* governed by **vendant**, and *eos* governed by **habeant**.

ceperint, subjunct. due to *quae*, generic or restrictive (see App. II.), "such things as."

2. **vendant**, final subjunct. **quibus** = *ut eis* (see App. II.)

quam quo . . . desiderent, virtually oblique subjunct. of alleged cause. The reason given is not the real one, but one that might be attributed (see App. II.)

quam and the comparative are equivalent in sense to a nega-

tive, so that the phrase is virtually the same as the ordinary *non quo*, "not because." On the same principle *quisquam*, which is only used after a negative, can follow *quam* and a comparative.

3. **desiderent** here means merely "desire." Another and more common meaning is "feel the loss of," "miss."

Quin etiam, "nay more." Sometimes *quin* is used alone in this sense.

Galli. Many of the words in Latin connected with horses are Celtic—*e.g.*, *essedum*, *covinus*, "war-chariot"; *petorritum*, *raeda*, "a travelling-carriage," and others. In some of them we can detect common Celtic words lurking. *Petorritum*, which means "four-wheeled," contains the Celtic word for "four": Welsh, *pedwar*; Cornish, *perwar*; Breton, *pevar*.

4. **impenso**, lit. "profusely expended"; hence "lavish," "great."

6. **ut sint . . . efficiunt**, "they render them."

summi ut . . . laboris. Summi, by being placed before **ut** and separated from **laboris**, is made very emphatic. The genitive is that of quality or description (see on ch. i. 19, for the ablative). The genitive is used rather of general qualities, the ablative of special characteristics and personal features. Both are used of mental qualities.

7. **Equestribus proeliis**, *in* omitted, as often; cf. **eodem vestigio** below, and more often than not with *locus*.

pedibus, "on foot." The ablative is instrumental.

8. **eodem . . . vestigio**, "in the same spot."

10. **moribus**, "according to their customs." *Mores*, the plural, also means "character," because "habits" form "character."

habetur, "is held," "considered."

ephippiis, a Greek word (*ἐφίππια*), "horse-cloths," "housings."

11. **ad**, "against."

quemvis, like *quilibet*, "any you please." Distinguish these from *quisquam* and *ullus*, which mean "any" after a negative or the equivalent: *non quivis hoc facere potest* = "not *every one* can do it"; *non quisquam hoc facere potest* = "*no one* can do it."

12. **quamvis pauci**, "however few." *Quamvis* is used thus with an adjective, and also as a relative adverb ("although"), with the subjunct.

Vinum——arbitrantur. Cæsar records the same of the Nervii, a warlike Belgic tribe (Bk. ii. ch. xv.)

omnino . . . non patiuntur, "altogether refuse to allow."

Chapter III.

1. **Publice**, "as a nation."

quam — agros, "that as wide a tract of country as possible, stretching from their borders, should be waste land."

4. **a Suebis**, "in the direction of the Suebi"; a very common use of *a, ab;* cf. the phrases *a tergo, a latere, a fronte, ab occasu, ab oriente, a septentrionibus, a meridie*, &c.

centum. Some editors read *sescenta*, an incredible statement, as this distance would comprise the whole of Southern Germany.

agri, nom. plur., subject of **dicuntur.**

5. **succedunt**, "come close up." For this use of *sub*, cf. *sub noctem*, "at nightfall"; *sub vallum*, "close up to the rampart."

6. **ut est captus Germanorum**, "as far as the capacity of the Germans allows." **Captus** is a noun.

7. **eiusdem generis**, the German race.

8. **multum**, adverbial, as in ch. i. 15. Below we have **multo.** The difference is that *multum* is used with verbs, *multo* with comparatives (an abl. of measure).

10. **moribus**, abl., as **officio** in ch. i. 13.

cum, concessive, "although."

13. **humiliores infirmioresque**, predicative, "reduced them to a state of far greater dependence and weakness."

Chapter IV.

1. **causa**, "case," "position." It is from this use of *causa* that the French *chose*, which is derived from it, gets its meaning.

supra. Ch. i. 2.

2. **diximus.** Notice the transitive use of *dico* with accusative in sense of "mention." It may be well here to give a warning about verbs which in grammars are said to "take a dative." No verb really "takes a dative." Either the verb is transitive in English and intransitive in Latin, as *noceo tibi*, "I hurt you"—lit. = "I am hurtful to you" (so *parco*, "I am sparing"; *pareo*, "I am obedient"), or, more frequently, what in English seems the direct object is in Latin the indirect. For instance, *impero* is a transitive verb, and as such takes an accusative—*impero obsides*, "I demand hostages"; *impero hoc*, "I order this"; but, as usual, the indirect object is in the dative—*impero tibi*, "I order [this to] you." So *credo me tibi*, "I entrust myself to you"; *credo tibi*, "I trust [to]

you." Hence "hostages are demanded" = *obsides imperantur*; "hostages are ordered" = *obsidibus imperatur*, because only the *acc.* of the active construction can become the subject of the passive.

2. **complures annos**, acc. of duration of time. Do not be misled by the English word "during," which does not always imply duration, but sometimes time "within which," expressed by the ablative: *e.g.*, *duos annos aeger erat* = "during two years he was ill (*i.e.*, the whole time); *duobus annis bis aeger erat* = "during two years he was ill twice" (*i.e.*, in the course of two years). Cf. **una nocte**, below.

sustinuerunt. An action, however long its actual duration, is put into the perfect (or rather aorist) in Latin, if it is regarded as a whole or point of time, without stress being laid on its continuance. The aorist can be compared to a *point*, the imperfect to a *line*.

3. **agris**, abl. of separation.

multis locis, *in* omitted; see on ch. ii. 7.

4. **triennium**, duration of time: so *biennium*.

quas. Whenever you see a relative at the beginning of a new sentence, look to the end to see whether it is the "connective" relative (= "and he, she, it"), as here, connecting two clauses together, or whether it is the ordinary relative introducing a subordinate clause, with the principal clause, containing an antecedent expressed or understood, coming after.

regiones. See map.

9. **prohibebant**, "tried to stop." When *prohibeo* is used without a negative, the usual construction is the infinitive, as here; when it is negatived, it is followed by *quominus*, *ne*, *quin*, with the subjunct. See App. II.

11. **custodias**. *Custodiae* consisted of sentinels put to guard a particular point; *vigiliae*, small outposts of three or four men for night watches; *stationes*, larger detachments.

reverti se . . . simulaverunt. *Simulo* is constructed with the acc. and infin., not with the prolative infinitive: *e.g.*, "I pretend to be good" is *simulo me esse bonum*, not *esse bonus*.

12. **tridui**, gen. of definition, "consisting of," to be distinguished from the gen. of quality or description.

reverterunt. Just above the verb is deponent. It is only active in the perfect and the tenses formed from it.

13. **una nocte**, "during one night"—*i.e.*, "within the limits of," which is always expressed by the abl. It is not duration of time. See note on **complures annos** above.

equitatu, "by riding," instrum. abl. This is a rare verbal use of *equitatus*.

13. **confecto**, abl. abs. with **omni hoc itinere**.

17. **occupatis**, "seized." *Occupo* does not mean "to occupy."

prius quam and *antequam*, like *dum*, *quoad*, are often used with the subjunct., even of a fact that is past, because of the idea of *purpose* lurking in them (see App. II.)

20. **se eorum**. **Se** is put out of its natural order for the sake of emphasising the contrast between the two pronouns.

copiis, "by means of their supplies."

CHAPTER V.

1. **infirmitatem**, "instability."

2. **in consiliis capiendis mobiles**, "impulsive."

novis . . . rebus, "change." Generally the phrase means "revolution." Notice the emphatic order.

3. **nihil . . . committendum**, "ought to place no reliance on them."

4. **Est —— consuetudinis**, "there is also this point in Gallic custom." *Consuetudinis* is partitive gen. Cf. *id temporis*, "at that time."

uti. Besides the ordinary *final* and *consecutive* uses of *ut* with the subjunct. there are two others, (a) *substantival*, as here, introducing a clause that is practically equivalent to a substantive; (b) *concessive*, "granted that," a comparatively rare use.

The Gauls were like the Athenians (Acts xvii. 21), who "spent their time in nothing else but either to tell or to hear some new thing." For an example of this credulity see Bk. vi. ch. xx. Martial (v. i. 10) uses *Galla* (=*Gallica*) *credulitas* as a proverbial expression.

5. **quid . . . audierit . . . cognoverit**, indirect questions. Some editions read *quod*. In this case the clause would be relative, "whatever each may have heard."

6. **quaque**. Always look carefully to see whether such a form is a part of *quisque*, as here, or the pronoun with *que* attached, as **quibusque, quasque**, just below.

quaerant . . . circumsistat . . . cogat, constructed with **uti**.

7. **quibusque . . . quasque**, indirect questions dependent on **pronuntiare**.

8. **pronuntiare**. Remember that *cogo* is constructed with the infinitive, and not with *ut* and subjunct.

His —— respondeant. "Under the excitement of these facts

and rumours they often form decisions on matters of the highest importance, of which they are compelled to repent on the spot: for they are the slaves of unconfirmed reports, and in most cases people invent answers to suit their wishes."

9. **auditionibus**, "hearsay."

10. **eos**, governed by the impersonal **paenitere**.

paenitere necesse est. *Necesse est* has three alternative constructions—

$$necesse\ est \begin{cases} ut\ eas \\ eas \\ tibi\ ire \end{cases} = \text{you must go.}$$

11. **plerique**, *i.e.*, most of the traders.

12. **ficta**, acc. after **respondeant** (see on ch. iv. 2).

Chapter VI.

1. **ne —— occurreret**, "that he might not find the war more serious" or "a more serious war." Notice this latter way of translating the predicative adjective.

2. **consuerat** = *consueverat*.

3. **Eo —— cognovit**, "on his arrival he found his suspicions realised."

facta, *sc. esse*, as with **missas** and **invitatos** below.

4. **missas** = *missas esse*, dependent on the idea of **cognovit** continued.

5. **discederent**—*i.e.*, farther into Gaul.

omnia, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. The Gauls said to the Germans, "*Omnia quae postulaveritis erunt parata.*" Contrast the laxity of our English tense-usage in temporal sentences with the accuracy of the Latin. When the Romans said "shall have asked," we should say simply "ask." **Postulassent** is suboblique subjunct. See App. II.

6. **fore parata**, fut. perf. infin. pass. The infinitive is dependent on some verb of "saying" understood from **invitatos**, "had been invited to . . . and *assured* that all," &c.

Qua spe, English idiom, "hope *of* this."

8. **clientes**, a dependent state, supplying soldiers and paying tribute in return for protection.

9. **cognoverat**. The fact that this is not in the suboblique subjunct. shows that it was not a part of Cæsar's thought at the time, but was added by him when writing to explain **ea**.

dissimulanda, *sc. esse*. Remember the difference between *simulo* and *dissimulo*: *quod non es, simulas; dissimulasque quod es.*

10. **equitatu imperato,** "cavalry having been demanded" (see note on ch. iv. 2).

11. **gerere constituit.** Notice that the usual construction of *constituo* is the prolative infinitive.

CHAPTER VII.

1. **in ea loca . . . quibus in locis.** Cæsar is fond of this somewhat stilted kind of repetition. It merely = "these places where."

2. **Germanos——venisse.** Trans. into *or. rect.*: "We Germans are not aggressively attacking the Romans, yet at the same time we do not, if provoked, shrink from fighting, as it is a traditional custom with us to offer resistance to aggression and not to beg for peace. But what we do say is this, that we have come," &c.

4. **priores . . . inferre.** Cf. *ultimus veni,* "I was the last to come"; *primus abii,* "I was the first to go."

5. **recusare . . . quin,** "shrink from fighting." *Quin* is made up of *qui,* old abl. = *quo,* and *n* = *ne,* negative. See App. II.

6. **armis contendant.** See on **bello,** ch. i. 5.

8. **deprecari,** "cry off," "beg for mercy."

dicere, *sc. se* as subject; also with **posse,** below.

10. **utiles esse amicos,** emphatic order (see on ch. i. 20: "We can be *useful* friends to you").

attribuant, jussive subjunct. All through this piece of *or. obl.* the primary sequence is used for sake of vividness.

11. **possederint.** There are two cognate words, *possideo,* "I am master of," and *possido,* "I become master of," both of which make perfect *possedi.* The tense here shows that the word in the text is from *possido.*

13. **reliquum . . . neminem,** emphatic order, "there was absolutely no one else."

CHAPTER VIII.

1. **quae visum est,** *sc. respondere,* "what it seemed good to him to answer," "made an appropriate reply"; **visum est** = Greek ἔδοξε. As to the speeches in Cæsar, Stock (Intro., p. 13) says: "The speeches in ancient writers are not supposed to be genuine. They constitute the dramatic element in history. Their merit is not to say what was actually said, but to say what was appropriate to the occasion."

exitus, "the conclusion."

3. **verum**, "fair."

remanerent . . . potuerint . . . possint, &c., a mixture of strict with vivid sequence.

5. **praesertim**, "which could be given (to any people), particularly to so great a horde."

7. **sint . . . querantur . . . petant.** These subjunctives are purely suboblique, whereas **possint**, above, would have been subjunctive even in direct speech, owing to **qui** consecutive; see App. II.

8. **hoc . . . Ubiis.** See on ch. iv. 2.

Chapter IX.

1. **re deliberata**, "after deliberation."

2. **post diem tertium**, "two days after." The Romans reckoned *inclusively*.

reversuros. See on **reverterunt**, ch. iv. 12.

propius se. *Propius* and *proxime*, being degrees of comparison of *prope*, are often used with the acc., as though they were themselves prepositions; cf. ch. xxviii. 8.

3. **Ne——dixit**: "even this request, Cæsar said, could not be obtained from him." Remember that the phrase *ne . . . quidem* never varies; the *ne* cannot be changed into any other form of negative.

Chapter X.

[The text of this chapter is very uncertain.]

1. **Mosa . . . Vosego.** As a matter of fact, the *Meuse* rises from the plateau of *Langres*, which was probably included in the ancient Vosegus. The modern *Vosges* mountains are N.E. of the Lingones, whose name survives in *Langres*.

3. **insulam**, formed by the *Rhine*, *Waal*, *Meuse*, and *Ocean*—*i.e.*, the *Rhine* delta.

neque longius=*et non-longius*, the negative belonging only to **longius**.

inde—*i.e.*, from the *Ocean*, the *North Sea*.

milibus=*quam milibus*. After *amplius*, *plus*, *minus*, with numerals, *quam* is idiomatically omitted. **Milibus** here is not abl. of comparison but abl. of measure. Cf. ch. xii. 2, where *non amplius octingentos*=*non amplius quam octingentos*.

5. **Lepontiis.** The name of the people is treated as that of a place.

longo spatio, "for a long distance"; the abl. of measure is here used for the acc. of extent, as not unfrequently, the two being akin in meaning. "The town is ten miles distant" can be translated either by *decem milia* or *decem milibus, abest,* according as either the intervening space or the measure of distance is considered.

7. **citatus,** "with a fast current."

Oceano. The dative is due to the idea of "nearness" in **adpropinquavit,** and is not the dative expressing "motion to," which is common in poetry but rare in prose.

8. **multis——effectis,** "forming many large islands." One of the great deficiencies in Latin is that it has no perfect participle active. The pass. part. in abl. abs. has to be used to express the idea, but in translating use the *English* idiom. Notice, too, that in English we loosely use the *present* where the more accurate Latin uses the *past* tense. There is another difference in idiom between the two languages to be observed in this sentence, *multis ingentibus***que** = "many great."

9. **nationibus,** "tribes," a much smaller division than our "nations."

10. **piscibus atque ovis,** abl. of means, "on fish and eggs."

11. **existimantur,** "to whom belong those (well-known people) who are thought," &c.; Cæsar has definite people in his mind, and uses the indicative. *Sunt qui,* meaning "some" (*i.e.,* "there are such as"), is used with the subjunctive.

capitibus, "mouths," more generally used of the "source."

Chapter XI.

1. **non amplius . . . milibus.** *Quam* omitted, as in last chapter. However, it is possible to regard **milibus** as abl. of comparison = *quam milia* (see note on *longo spatio* in ch. x. 5).

2. **ut erat constitutum.** In ch. ix., so far from making any "arrangement" with the envoys for their return, Cæsar seems to have discouraged them.

5. **antecessissent,** suboblique subjunct.

pugna, abl. of separation.

6. **sibi,** emphatic position, with special force. In ch. viii., Cæsar had promised to send to the Ubii, but the Germans ask that *they themselves* may have the opportunity.

legatos mittendi. With transitive verbs Cæsar generally uses the gerundive construction, and not the gerund; but he employs the

gerund here to avoid the ugly sounding *legatorum mittendorum*; cf. ch. xiv. 5.

7. **quorum —— ostendebant**, "if their chiefs and senate gave them full assurance on oath, they intimated that they would accept the terms that were offered by Cæsar." Carefully compare the differences between English and Latin idiom and phraseology in this sentence.

8. **fecisset**, singular, in agreement with the nearer of two subjects.

9. **tridui spatium**, gen. of definition.

10. **daret**, jussive subjunct., "let him give," representing direct *da*.

eodem illo, "tended the same way," adverbs.

14. **quam frequentissimi**, "in as large numbers as possible."

convenirent, jussive subjunct., "let them come," representing *convenite* of the direct speech.

16. **mittit . . . ne**. We should say "sends them a message ordering them not to."

nuntiarent. An historic present, like **mittit**, can be used with either primary or secondary sequence.

17. **quoad . . . accessisset**, "until he himself *came*," English idiom for "should have come."

Chapter XII.

1. **hostes ubi**, English idiom, "when the enemy saw . . . they . . ." In Latin, the subject is put with the *principal* verb, and the pronoun supplied with the *subordinate*. The principal verb, of which **hostes** is subject, is of course **perturbaverunt**. The whole of this long sentence is a good example of the beautiful clearness of the Latin arrangement of sentences, with strict regard to the proper sequence of events and ideas.

ubi primum, "as soon as."

2. **V milium**, gen. of definition.

cum, "though."

amplius octingentos. See note on **milibus**, ch. x. 3.

4. **timentibus nostris . . . nostros**. As a general rule, if the participial construction can be brought into the construction of the sentence, the abl. abs. is not used. Here **nostris** might have been omitted and **timentibus** have been put in agreement with **nostros**. The variation from the general rule here is accounted for by the separation of **timentibus nostris** from **perturbaverunt**. Cf. Bk. v. ch. xliv. 13.

6. **indutiis,** "for a truce," dat. of purpose or work contemplated.
his—*i.e.*, the Romans.

8. **compluribus nostris,** "our men in many cases," instead of the more natural *compluribus e nostris*, "several of our men." **noster** is used by Cæsar as an equivalent for *Romanus*; cf. ch. xxii. 3.

9. **atque,** "and further."

10. **ita perterritos egerunt,** "so terrified and routed."
fuga, abl. of separation.

11. **in conspectum,** "in sight." Wherever there is any idea of motion, *in* must be used with the acc. Here again Latin is more accurate; see on ch. xviii. 10.
venisset, subjunct., due to idea of purpose in **prius quam**; see on ch. iv. 17, and App. II.

13. **Piso** had probably received his Roman name when he obtained his citizenship.

14. **obtinuerat,** "had held."
amicus. *Amicus populi Romani* was a title granted by the Roman Senate to a foreign prince or chieftain for services rendered, or with a view to secure fidelity. In Bk i. ch. iii. we hear of Catamantaloedis, chief of the Sequani, mentioned as an *amicus*; in Bk. i. ch. xxxv., Ariovistus; and in Bk. vii. ch. xxxi., Ollovico of the Nitobroges. The title was evidently valued, as Ptolemy Auletes, King of Egypt, spent considerable sums of money in trying to obtain it.

16. **eripuit . . . restitit.** In order to make a narrative more graphic and vivid, or to emphasise an antithesis, a connecting particle is often omitted. This omission is called *asyndeton*.

Chapter XIII.

2. **qui . . . intulissent.** Even had the verb not been suboblique, it would have been in the subjunct., owing to qui causal = "inasmuch as they."

3. **ultro,** "unprovoked."

4. **exspectare——iudicabat,** "he thought it was the height of madness to wait until the enemy *were reinforced* and the cavalry *returned*. Notice again the difference in English and Latin idiom in tense usage of the italicised words.
augerentur . . . reverteretur. See on ch. iv. 17.

5. **summae dementiae,** lit., "a sign of the highest madness"; gen. of possession used as predicate.

6. **infirmitate**—*i.e.*, the instability of character described in ch. v.

6. **quantum . . . auctoritatis**, partitive gen.; so **apatii**, below. Trans., "how much prestige."

9. **legatis et quaestore.** For the quæstor's usual duties, see Introduction, p. xxiii. Here, as in Bk. v. ch. xxiv., he is associated in military command with the *legati*. Cæsar's quæstor was M. Crassus.

ne quem, *quis* indefinite, "that he might not let a day slip." Remember that *quis* indefinite is rarely used, except with *ne* and *si*. This clause is explanatory of **consilio**, "his plan not to."

10. **pugnae**, defining gen., but trans., "a day *for* battle"; cf. ch. xiv. 5, *consilii habendi . . . spatio*.

11. **quod** explains **res**.

postridie eius diei, a pleonastic phrase.

12. **usi**, with present rather than past meaning, a fairly common use of the perf. deponent participle; cf. *arbitratus*, ch. xxiii. 10; *commoratus*, Bk. v. ch. vii. 6. This is due to the Latin avoidance of the pres. part. (except in the oblique cases, as equivalent to a relative clause or noun—*e.g.*, *pugnantium modo*). English idiom is exactly contrary to the Latin.

13. **adhibitis**, "bringing all their chiefs and elders"; see note on *multis effectis*, ch. x. 8.

ad eum in castra. In English we should say "came to him in the camp," where "in the camp" qualifies "him." In Latin, a prepositional or adverbial phrase is rarely used by itself to qualify a noun. For some exceptions, see on ch. xvi. 15.

simul . . . simul, "partly . . . partly."

14. **purgandi sui causa.** As **sui** is plural, strict grammar would require *purgandorum sui*, but **purgandi** is made to agree with the *form* of **sui**; cf. ch. xxxiv. 13.

quod . . . commisissent, virtually suboblique subjunct., because it expresses their own confession, "excuse themselves for having, *as they admitted*, engaged;" cf. ch. xvi. 19. This makes **dictum esset** and **petissent** suboblique.

contra atque esset dictum, "contrary to what had been agreed." *Ac*, *atque* are used after adverbs, pronouns, and adjectives implying similarity (*e.g.*, *simul*, *idem*, *alius*, *similis*) to express the comparison or contrast.

15. **petissent** = *petiissent*, *petivissent*. The Germans themselves had begged for a truce, and yet had treacherously commenced hostilities by attacking the Roman cavalry.

ut——impetrarent, "to gain whatever they could, by treacherous negotiation (**fallendo**) for a truce." **Indutiis**, according to this translation, refers not to the truce already broken, but to a

further truce that they hoped to obtain. Another translation is possible, "by a misrepresentation of (the infringement of) the truce."

16. **si quid, lit.**, "if anything"—*i.e.*, "whatever." So *si quando*, "whenever"; *sicubi*, "wherever"; *sicunde*, "from whatever place"; *si qua*, "by whatever way"; *si quo*, "in whatever direction."

Quos . . . illos. **Quos** is connective relative = *et illos*; **illos** is therefore unnecessarily inserted.

18. **equitatumque——perterritum.** The cavalry had some reason for fear, inasmuch as (ch. xii.) 5000 of them had been routed by 800 of the enemy.

Chapter XIV.

1. **Acie triplici,** see Introduction, p. xxvi. *Acies* is the fighting order of troops, *agmen* the marching order. Apparently here they marched in fighting order.

2. **prius . . . quam . . . possent.** See on ch. iv. 17.

5. **consilii habendi . . . spatio,** "time for taking counsel." See on *diem pugnae*, ch. xiii. 10. Notice the difference of construction, **consilii habendi** gerundive, **arma capiendi** gerund. For explanation, see on ch. xi. 6.

6. **copiasne——praestaret,** "whether it were better to lead the troops against the enemy, or to defend the camp, or to seek safety by means of flight"; three alternative indirect questions, dependent on **perturbantur**, "are thrown into a state of perplexity."

7. **Quorum,** connective relative: **cum** is a conjunction, not a preposition.

8. **pristini diei perfidia,** "by yesterday's treachery."

9. **Quo loco,** *in* omitted, as so frequently with *loco*, *locis*; cf. ch. ii. 7.

12. **puerorum mulierumque,** "consisting of women and children," gen. of definition. Notice the significance in the difference between English and Latin order; cf. ch. xix. 7, *liberos, uxores.*

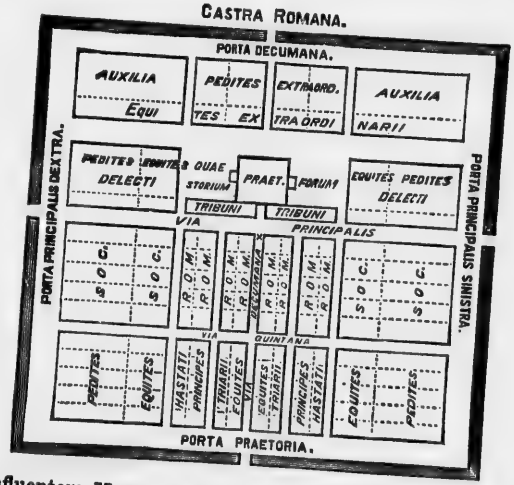
13. **fugere coepit.** With an active infinitive, the active perfect, *coepi*, is used; with a passive infinitive, the deponent, *coeptus sum: e.g.*, *coepi fugere*, but *coeptus sum fugari.*

Undoubtedly Cæsar's treatment of the Usipetes and Tencteri is one of the least satisfactory episodes of his career. Even if entire credence be placed in Cæsar's charge of treachery against them (and there is at least one very doubtful point in his account), he was not justified in detaining a deputation that had come with apologies, in surprising the enemy at a time when they believed there was truce, and in sending cavalry to massacre the women and children. So strongly did his old enemy Cato (a stern, bigoted, uncompromising

enemy, it must be admitted) feel, that when a *supplicatio*, or public thanksgiving, was proposed to celebrate his achievements in Gaul and Britain, he proposed as an amendment that Cæsar be handed over to the Usipetes and Tencteri. In palliation of his conduct, it may be urged that, supposing there was any treachery on the enemy's part, it was in accordance with the spirit of the age (of which, as a rule, Cæsar seems in advance) to take ruthless vengeance, and that the fickle nature of the Gauls rendered a stern lesson necessary.

Chapter XV.

2. **signis militaribus.** These were figures of animals on poles. **se . . . eiecerunt,** "they hurried."



3. **confluentem Mosae et Rheni.** This must mean the confluence of the *Mosa* with the *Vacalus* (*Waal*), which Cæsar has in ch. x. referred to as the *Rhine* (*in Rhenum influit*). But there is a difficulty, because Cæsar crossed the *Rhine* far higher up, and there is no record of the march southwards. Accordingly, some authorities would read *Mosellae* for **Mosae** here. But it seems very unlikely that Cæsar is referring to any other confluence than that mentioned in ch. x. Probably the march southwards to the place of crossing is omitted, as lacking incident.

3. **confluentem,** used as a substantive, like *continens, profluens,* some noun like *locus* being understood.

4. **reliqua fuga desperata,** "despairing of further flight."

6. **ad unum,** "to a man."

7. **ex . . . timore,** "recovering from their fear." *Ex* often has the meaning of "after."

8. **cum——fuisset** explains **timore.** We should put the sentence in a parenthesis ("for the number," &c.)

capitum depends on **milium,** which is gen. of definition.

9. **iis,** the deputation.

10. **potestatem fecit,** "gave the opportunity."

12. **His——concessit.** This acquiescence on Cæsar's part is more in accordance with his general character than the rest of his treatment of the Usipetes and Tencteri.

Chapter XVI

2. **quarum——transire,** "of these the most valid was that, as he saw the Germans were so easily persuaded to cross into Gaul, he wished they also should have some anxiety for their own position at home by being made to understand that the army of Rome had both the power and the courage to cross the Rhine."

4. **quoque**—*i.e.,* they, as well as the people whose land they were invading.

6. **Accessit . . . quod,** lit., "there came also the fact that," *i.e.,* "besides." A similar expression is *additum est quod; accedo* is used in this phrase as the passive of *addo.*

8. **transisse**=*transiisse, transivisse.*

proelio, dative.

11. **qui postularent,** final subjunct., "to ask" (see App. II.)

qui intulissent, subjunct. due to *qui,* restrictive, "such as" (see App. II.)

sibi. Remember that the reflexive pronoun in a subordinate clause can refer to the subject of the sentence on which it depends, as well as to the subject of its own clause. Here, of course, **sibi**=Cæsar. There seems to be no strict rule as to the use of the reflexive pronoun in a relative or rel. adverb clause when the pronoun refers to the subject of the principal verb, but generally it is employed if the verb of the subordinate clause is in the subjunctive.

12. **dederent,** jussive subjunct. in semi-dependence on **postularent** (see App. II.)

12. **responderunt.** Cæsar puts into the mouths of the Germans a speech that from their point of view is convincing.

13. **se invito,** "against his will," abl. abs.

14. **non aequum,** "unfair."

sui . . . imperii, partitive gen. with **quicquam.** **Sui** refers to the Germans; *quisquam* and *ullus* are only used in negative or virtually negative sentences. Questions often have the force of a negative. See also on ch. ii. 2.

15. **potestatis trans Rhenum** = *potestatis transrhenanae.* Here, contrary to general usage, a prepositional phrase qualifies a noun, like an adjective, without being "bracketed" to it by a participle or adjective. In English, this is the ordinary idiom. In Latin, any unattached prepositional phrase as a rule must be taken with the verb of the sentence. For this attributive use of a phrase, cf. ch. xxxiii. 1, *ex essedis pugnae;* Bk. v. ch. xl. 14, *loricae ex cratibus.* When the noun is verbal and expresses motion, it is not uncommon—*e.g.*, ch. xxi. 5, *in Britanniam traiectus;* Bk. v. ch. liv. 6, *adventu in Galliam.*

postularet represents direct *cur postulas.* The right rule for questions in *or. obl.* (there is a discrepancy between the rules given in various grammars) seems to be that questions which in *or. rect.* are (*a*) in the 1st and 3rd person, are in *or. obl.* put into the acc. and infin., unless they were in the subjunct. in *or. rect.*, in which case they remain in the subjunct.; (*b*) in the 2nd person, are put in the subjunct. in *or. obl.*

16. **uni,** "alone."

miserant . . . fecerant . . . dederant—asyndeton (see on ch. xii. 16).

19. **premerentur,** virtually oblique subjunct., implying that it was the reason they gave; cf. ch. xiii. 14. Remember *quia, quod* causal are used with the indicative normally.

facere. See note on ch. iv. 9.

occupationibus rei publicae. If **occupationibus** has a passive force here, **rei publicae** is objective gen., "engagements in state affairs"; if an active, the gen. is subjective, "the engrossing demands of the state"; cf. ch. xxii. 9.

20. **modo,** "just," "only." Distinguish between *modo* (1) noun, dat. or abl. of *modus,* "limit," "manner" (*modo,* "after manner of," is used as a preposition; see ch. xvii. 11); (2) adverb, (*a*) "now," (*b*) "only," especially in phrase *non modo;* (3) relative adverb with subjunct., "provided that," either by itself or joined with *dum.*

transportaret, jussive subjunct.

20. **id——futurum**, "that for (as regards) assistance and hope for the future, that would suffice." The gen. (**temporis**) is objective.

22. **nomen atque opinionem**, "reputation and prestige."

eius, "his," dependent on, not agreeing with, **exercitus**.

Ariovisto pulso. We should say, "owing to the defeat of Ariovistus." The defeat of Ariovistus is recorded in Bk. i. ch. xxx. onwards.

23. **etiam ad**, "even in the eyes of."

24. **opinione**, "prestige," as above.

tuti esse. Note that the predicate of the prolative infinitive is always in the same case as the subject of the verb on which it depends.

Chapter XVII.

2. **sed—— statuebat**, "but crossing by ships (abl. of means or instrument), he decided, was neither quite safe nor worthy of the prestige of himself or Rome." For the gen., cf. ch. xiii. 5.

5. **proponebatur**, "presented itself to him"—the "middle" use of the passive; cf. ch. xxxii. 10.

6. **id——aliter**, "that he must aim at this, or else . . ."

7. **Rationem——iungebat**. "This was the plan of the bridge that he adopted. At an interval of two feet he braced together pairs of piles a foot and a half thick, sharpened a little way from the bottom, measured in accordance with the depth of the stream." Study the illustration.

8. **dimensa**, deponent used passively, as not uncommonly in the participle.

10. **Haec——statuebat**. "When, by his machinery, he had lowered these into the stream and fixed them, and had driven them in with rammers, not quite perpendicularly, like (an ordinary) pile, but sloping and slantwise, so as to incline with the current, he then set opposite to these two other piles braced in the same way, at a distance of forty feet lower down stream, sloping against the force and rush of the current."

machinationibus, explained by illustration.

11. **defixerat . . . adegerat**. *Cum*, with the pluperfect indic., implies frequency (see on ch. i. 10). Here the operation was repeated on many pairs of piles, probably about sixty, as the breadth of the *Rhine* at *Bonn*, where he probably crossed, is about 530 feet.

modo, "after the manner of" (see note on ch. xvi. 20).

12. **ad perpendiculum**. The preposition, as in **ad eundem modum** below, has the force of "according to."

A A, *tigna.*
B B, *trabes.*
C C, *fibulæ* (? see note).
D D, *materia.*
E E, *subtilone* (*oblique netæ*).
F F, *subtilone* (*defensores*).
G *fistucæ.*

14. **intervallo**, "at an interval," practically adverbial. It is difficult to classify this abl. It may originally have been either abl. of measure, or locative abl., or abl. abs. ("there being an interval").

quadragenum, distributive, because of the several pairs of piles. The imperfect, **iungebat**, is due to the same reason.

ab inferiore parte, either "lower down stream" (lit., "sloping from a lower part of the stream") or "at the lower end of the piles" (lit., "measured from the lower end"). If it is taken in the former sense, Cæsar does not say whether the forty feet distance lay between the upper end of the sloping piles or the lower. It would, of course, make a difference of several feet in the breadth of the roadway of the bridge. In either case notice the accurate use of the preposition **ab**; cf. **ab extrema parte**, and **ab imo**.

16. **Haec utraque——tenerentur.** "Beams two feet thick having been let in from above to the width of the fastening between these piles (*i.e.*, each member of the pairs), the two (opposite) pairs were held apart by two braces on either side."

utraque. *Uterque*, in the sing., is used of *individual* things or persons; in the plural, of *sets*. So with *quisque, alius, alter*.

17. **quantum——distabat** means that the *trabs* on which the roadway rested just filled the space between the two piles, which, Cæsar says above, were two feet apart.

binis utrimque fibulis. There is great divergence of opinion as to the meaning of this phrase. *Fibula* is variously interpreted as (1) a "brace" joining the two piles, nailed on (Heller and Cohausen); (2) a "pin" running through the two piles (Kraner); (3) "cross-stays" between the pairs of piles, cutting one another vertically, the centre of each arch (Emperor Napoleon III.) Most authorities incline to (1) or (2), as better suiting the meaning of *fibula* ("a brooch" or "brooch-pin"); but (3) is more suitable to **distinebantur**, "were kept apart," and the bridge needed some such support. It is difficult to see how this verb applies either to (1) or (2); for it would be the *trabs*, not the *fibulae*, that would hold the pairs of piles apart. There is some small MS. authority for *destinabantur* ("were fixed"), which would make good sense with (1) and (2). On the whole, as there is no authority for *fibulae* = cross-stays (3), it is best to take them in their natural meaning, (1) or (2), and to explain **distinebantur** to mean that the *fibulae*, by securing the *trabs* (which really held the pairs of *tigna* apart) at each end between the *tigna*, are said themselves to keep them apart. (1) and (3) are represented in the first illustration, (1) and (2) in the second.

dverbial. It is
ıave been either
'there being an

several pairs of
ıe reason.
" (lit., "sloping
wer end of the
is taken in the
y feet distance
or the lower.
al feet in the
case notice the
ma parte, and

t thick having
between these
ite) pairs were

lividual things
us, alter.
hich the road-
which, Cæsar

ce of opinion
nterpreted as
d Cohausen);
); (3) "cross-
ertically, the
t authorities
of *fibula* ("a
distineban-
uch support.
or (2); for it
pairs of piles
ntur ("were
2). On the
3), it is best
to explain
rabs (which
the *tigna*,
represented

ANOTHER VIEW OF CÆSAR'S BRIDGE.

A A, *tigna.*
B B, *trabes.*
C C, *fibulae* (?) (see xvi 17 (2)).
D D, *materia.*
E E, *sublicae* (*oblique actae*).
F F, *sublicae* (*defensores*).
G G, *fibulae* (?) or possibly *interuallae.*

17. **binis utrimque.** If we take *fibulae* as "braces" (1), **utrimquo** may mean, (*a*) on either side (inside and outside) of the pairs of piles, in which case there would be four each side of the bridge, eight in all at each arch; or (*b*) on either side of the bridge, in which case there would be only four at each arch; or (*c*) on either side of the arch, in which case there would only be two at each arch.

18. **quibus disclusis——tenerentur,** "and these piles being held apart and clamped in opposite directions, so great was the strength and nature of the structure, that the more strongly the volume of water dashed against it, the more tightly they were bound together."

quibus, connective rel. referring to **haec utraque**—*i.e.*, the pairs of *tigna.*

21. **incitavisset.** The subjunct. is due to attraction to **tenerentur,** hence it=*incitaverat;* and for this pluperfect of indefinite frequency, see note on **defixerat** above.

Haec——consternebantur. "This framework was connected by timber placed lengthwise, and was strewn with poles and hurdles." **Haec** is neuter plur., used loosely of the framework generally.

22. **derecta materia**—*i.e.*, resting on the *trabes* at right angles, whilst the *longurii* were placed across, on the top of the *materia.*

23. **ac nihilo —— nocerent,** "and nevertheless (*i.e.*, although the bridge was strong already) piles were driven in slantwise at the lower part of the river also, in order that, being set as a buttress and united with the whole structure, they might bear the force of the stream; and others also were set a little way above the bridge, that, if trunks of trees or ships were sent down by the natives to destroy the work, the shock of them might be lessened by these 'protectors,' and that they might not damage the bridge."

sublicae. In this passage distinguish carefully the two kinds of piles: (1) those driven in slantwise on the lower side of the bridge, acting as buttresses (E), and (2) those driven in above, and separate from the structure, as protectors against ships or timber floating down on to the bridge (F).

24. **quae,** final=*ut eae.*

pro ariete. A "ram" is generally an engine of offence; here, a means of defence.

26. **mediocri spatio.** See on ch. x. 5.

27. **deiciendi operis,** gen. descriptive of **naves,** "ships for the purpose of."

Chapter XVIII.

1. **Diebus x quibus**, abl. of "time within which." **coepta erat comportari.** See on ch. xiv. 13.
5. **quibus**, connective.
7. **fuga——iis.** The second abl. abs. depends on the first: "taking to flight at the exhortation of those."
10. **in solitudinem.** Latin accuracy uses **in** and acc. because of the idea of motion in **se abdiderat** (see on ch. xii. 11).

Chapter XIX.

5. **comperissent**, suboblique subjunct.
6. **uti** depends on idea of "ordering" in **nuntios dimisisse.**
7. **liberos, uxores.** See on ch. xiv. 12.
8. **possent** would have been subjunct. (*qui*="such as"), even had it not been suboblique.
9. **hunc**, "this spot had been chosen almost in the centre of."
10. **obtinerent**, suboblique subjunct.
hic . . . ibi. Both imply the same place.
12. **rebus . . . rerum.** For the repetition, cf. ch. vii. 2.
13. **ut . . . ut . . . ut**, the three purposes he had achieved (**rebus confectis**). The **ut** is repeated for giving greater clearness in enumeration.
15. **obsidione**, "from pressure."
16. **satis——profectum**, "that enough had been accomplished as regards both honour and expediency."
profectum, from *proficio.*

Chapter XX.

1. **Exigua——reliqua**, "as a small part of the summer remained."
4. **Gallicis bellis.** Help was sent from Britain to the Veneti the year before.
6. **magno . . . usui**, dat. of purpose. It is seldom used with any adjective except *magnus.*
si modo adisset. We should say, "only to have approached."
8. **Neque temere**, "not lightly."
9. **illo**, adv., "thither."
11. **Gallias**, plur., because divided into three parts.

12. **neque quanta —— portus.** There are here four indirect questions dependent on **reperire poterat,** of which the second and third are subdivided by **aut.**

Roman Warship.

14. **usum belli,** "usage in war," or it may mean "skill in war." The former suits the context slightly better. Cæsar's expedition to Britain was in reality due to love of adventure and exploration rather than to the necessity of conducting a punitive expedition. The assistance sent to Gaul from Britain seems to have been insignificant.

CHAPTER XXI.

1. **priusquam periculum faceret,** "before making the attempt." For the subjunct., see on ch. iv. 17.

2. **navi longa,** "man-of-war."

5. **brevissimus . . . traiectus.** All Cæsar seems to mean is that from the territory of the Morini (modern Departments of *Pas de Calais* and *Nord*) the crossing is shortest. We need not press **inde** to mean the harbour in that district, which is, in strict accuracy, by a mile or two the nearest. This territory includes the harbours of *Boulogne* (which the Romans also called Gesoriacum), *Ambleteuse*, *Wissant*, and *Calais*. It is probable that Cæsar embarked at the same harbour as in his second expedition (Bk. v. ch. ii.)—*i.e.*, Portus Itius; and whether this was *Boulogne* or *Wissant* cannot be definitely decided, but it was probably the former, in spite

of the fact that it bore also another name (Gesoriacum). Several indications point to *Wissant*, but unless the harbour was bigger then than it is now, it would not have afforded sufficient accommodation for Cæsar's fleet.

5. **in Britanniam traiectus.** For the form of the expression, see on ch. xvi. 15.

7. **superiore aestate**—*i.e.*, 56 B.C.

Veneticum bellum, a naval war with the Veneti, N.E. of modern *Brittany*.

10. **qui polliceantur,** final.

polliceantur . . . dare . . . obtemperare. The pres. infin. is a variation from the usual future.

12. **liberaliter pollicitus,** "having made generous promises."

13. **Commium quem . . . constituerat.** No previous mention is made of his appointment.

16. **arbitrabatur.** Cæsar advisedly uses this verb, for Commius was disloyal (see next note). For the result of Commius' mission, see ch. xxvii. and Index of Names.

cuiusque——habebatur. Another tribe of the name Atrebates, who were probably kinsmen of this Gallic people, lived in modern *Berkshire*. Hence Commius might be supposed to have influence with the Britons. However he abused Cæsar's trust, for he took an active part in the revolt of 52 B.C. (Bk. vii. ch. lxxv.)

magni, locative: so *quanti, tanti, pluris, minoris, parvi, maximi, minimi, flocci.*

17. **possit,** subjunct., owing to **quas** generic = "such as" (see App. II.) It is also suboblique.

adeat . . . horteturque . . . nuntiet, jussive subjunct. in semi-dependence on **imperat** (see App. II.)

18. **fidem sequantur,** "to seek the protection of."

20. **qui . . . auderet,** subjunct. due to **qui** causal = "since he."

22. **quaeque——perspexisset,** indirect question.

Chapter XXII.

2. **qui——fecissent,** "to make excuses for their conduct in the past, inasmuch as, owing to the fact that they were barbarians and had no experience of our usage, they had made war on the Roman people." For the subjunct., **fecissent,** see on ch. xiii. 2.

3. **superioris temporis.** Late in the summer of 56 B.C. they had given Cæsar trouble by remaining in arms after the pacification of the rest of Gaul (Bk. iii. ch. xxviii.)

4. **barbari . . . imperiti** are the emphatic words. The want of a present participle of *sum* is often felt.

nostrae = *Romanae*, though here used by Gauls, not Romans.

populo Romano, dative.

5. **quae imperasset**, suboblique subjunct. = *quae imperaveris* of the direct speech (see on ch. vi. 5).

9. **has . . . occupationes.** See on ch. xvi. 10.

Britanniae, a condensed expression (compendious comparison or brachylogy) for "the expedition into Britain."

10. **Quibus adductis eos.** This is not a variation from the general rule in Latin, that the abl. abs. is only used when the phrase cannot be worked into the construction of the sentence; for **quibus** and **eos** do not refer to the same people; **quibus** refers to the hostages, **eos** to the whole tribe.

11. **in fidem recepit**, "took them under his protection."

Navibus . . . onerariis, "transports," "troopships."

12. **ad duas . . . legiones.** If we reckon Cæsar's legions at 3600 men each, this would give 90 men to each transport. In ch. xxxvii. we find 300 men disembarking from two ships. The two legions were vii. and x.

13. **quod——navium longarum**, "all the ships of war that he had"; lit., "what of ships," &c., partitive gen.

quaestori. See on ch. xiii. 9.

14. **legatis praefectisque.** See Introduction, p. xxiii.

Huc = *ad has.*

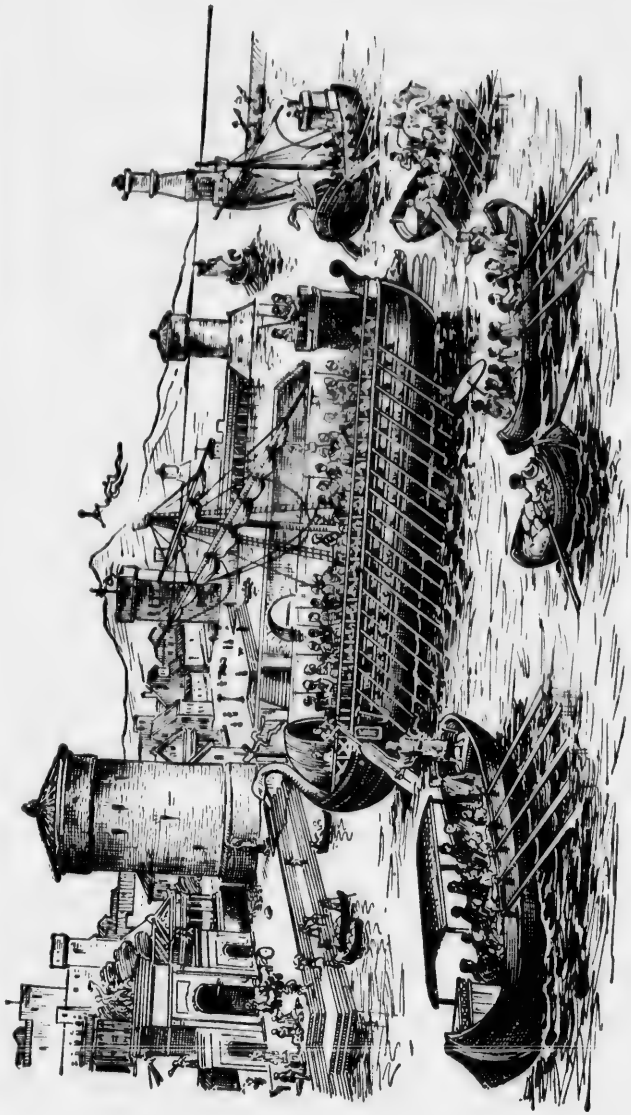
accedebant, "there were in addition"; cf. ch. xvi. 6. Besides the eighty transports which Cæsar collected at *Boulogne* (if *Boulogne* was the place of his embarkation), there were eighteen which were weather-bound at a port a little way higher up the coast, called in ch. xxiii. *portus ulterior*, and in ch. xxviii. *superior*. This may be identified with *Ambleteuse*. If *Wissant* be taken as the place of embarkation, the *portus ulterior* would be *Calais*. It was on these eighteen transports that his cavalry embarked, but, owing to stress of weather, they never landed in Britain.

15. **a milibus passuum viii**, "at a distance of eight miles." *A*, *ab* are not generally used in this sense if the place from which the distance is reckoned be mentioned, as here (**ex eo loco**).

16. **vento tenebantur quo minus**, "were weather-bound (and prevented) from."

20. **ducendum dedit.** Cf. the construction of the gerundive with *curo*—*e.g.*, *curavit filium docendum*, "he had his son taught"; cf. ch. xxix. 3.

22. **portum tenere**, here = "to occupy the port." Another meaning of the phrase is "to make for port."



Harbour.

Chapter XXIII.

1. **tempestatem**, as often simply "weather."

2. **tertia fere vigilia**, between midnight and 2.30 A.M. The time between sunset and sunrise was divided into four equal periods —*vigiliae*—which, of course, like the *hora*, varied in length according to the time of year. It was now the end of August, and it has been calculated from the fact that three days after the arrival in Britain (August 31, 3 A.M.) there was a full moon (ch. xxix. 1), that Cæsar reached the British coast on August 27. Accordingly he left France about midnight of August 26.

solvit, *sc. ancoram*, "he weighed anchor."

ulteriorem portum. See note on ch. xxii. 14.

4. **hora diei circiter quarta**. The Roman day was divided into twelve equal periods (*horae*) between sunrise and sunset. On August 27 sunrise would have been about 5.6 A.M., and sunset about 6.54 P.M. A *hora* on that day would be about 1 hour 18 minutes. Thus the fourth hour would be from about 8.33–9.42 A.M.

6. **collibus**, the cliffs of *Dover*.

10. **dum . . . convenirent**. See on ch. iv. 17.

eo, usual Latin accuracy for English "there."

11. **ad horam nonam**. The ninth hour would have been 2.18–3.2 P.M.

13. **monuitque —— administrarentur**. Trans., "gave injunctions that all things should be executed at the slightest sign and at the right moment, as the science of war required, and especially service on board ship, inasmuch as it entailed swift and unsteady motion." This sentence must be carefully studied. **Ut**, in the first two places = "as," and the subjunct. **postularent** is suboblique. The third **ut** goes closely with **quae**, lit. "as being things which"—*i.e.*, seeing that they (or "it," as **res maritimae** = "naval service"). *Ut qui*, like *quippe qui*, is used with the subjunct. (**haberent**), *qui* being generic or restrictive. **Administrarentur** is jussive subjunct. in semi-dependence, without an *ut*, on **monuit**.

15. **ad nutum**, lit., "at a nod."

16. **tempus**, like Greek *καιρός* = "the right moment."

17. **ventum . . . secundum**, a west wind, which brought him round the *South Foreland*.

19. **aperto ac plano litore**, the open beach between *Walmer* and *Deal*. The phrase is abl. abs.

Chapter XXIV.

2. **essedariis.** For the method of fighting from chariots, see ch. xxxiii. The *essedum* was a two-wheeled chariot.

quo . . . genere, English idiom, "a kind of fighting which."

consuerunt = *consueverunt*, "they have become accustomed"—*i.e.*, "they are accustomed."

3. **reliquis copiis.** With military terms—*e.g.*, *exercitu*, *equitatu*, *peditatu*, *legione*, *copiis*, *navibus*, *norissimo agmine*, and similar phrases, the abl. is used alone without *cum*. Some authorities classify this abl. as instrumental.

prohibebant, "tried to prevent."

5. **in alto,** "in deep water"; the neuter adj. used as a noun; cf. **ex arido,** below.

6. **militibus,** dat. of agent (so called) with *desiliendum*. This dat., used with the gerund, past part. pass., and parts of the verb formed from it, originally had no force of agency, but was simply dat. of possession: *eundum est mihi*, lit., "there is to me a going"; *factum est mihi*, "it is to me a thing done." However, its use was extended by analogy, when its original meaning became lost, and in poetry it is occasionally used of the agent with other parts of the passive verb.

ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, abl. abs.

7. **pressis** agrees with **militibus.**

9. **cum,** "whereas."

13. **pedestribus uti proeliis,** emphatic order.

Chapter XXV.

2. **ad usum,** "for handling" or "for manœuvring."

5. **tormentis,** engines for hurling missiles, worked by twisted (*torquco*) ropes. The term is a general one, including *catapultae*, which discharged darts, and *ballistae*, which hurled stones.

6. **remorum motu . . . permoti.** They were amazed at the strange sight of large ships controlled by rudders.

8. **pedem rettulerunt,** "withdrew."

Atque, "and so."

10. **decimae,** Cæsar's favourite legion.

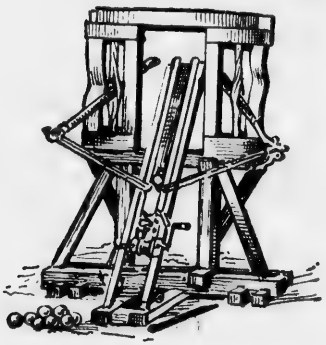
aquilam ferebat. See Introduction, p. xxiv.

ea res, "his effort."

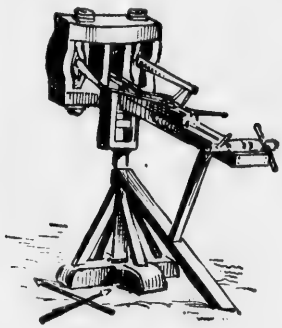
12. **meum**, emphatic position.

15. **cohortati inter se**, "with mutual encouragement.

TORMENTA.



Ballista.



Catapulta.

16. **universi**, "in a body."

Hos——navibus, placed before *cum* for emphasis.

CHAPTER XXVI.

2. **firmiter insistere**, "to gain a foothold."

signa subsequi. The **signa** here would be those of the maniples. See Introduction, p. xxvi.

3. **alius alia ex navi**, "out of the several ships," "one out of one ship, another out of another."

quibuscumque signis, dat. governed by **occurrerat**.

4. **occurrerat**, iterative pluperf. See on ch. i. 10. So **conspexerant**, below.

5. **singulares**, "individuals," opposed to **universos**, below.

7. **ab latere aperto**, "*on* their exposed side"—*i.e.*, the right. The shields were held on the left arm. Notice the accuracy of the Latin prep.

9. **scaphas** (σκάφη from σκάπτειν, "to hollow out"), small rowing-boats, carried by larger vessels.

speculatoria navigia, swift boats for reconnaissance. A Roman writer says they were painted sea-green (*colore vegeto*) to escape detection.

10. **conspexerat.** For tense see above. So **submittebat,** "he kept sending."

11. **simul**=*simul atque.*

in arido. Cf. *ex aridо, in alto* (ch. xxiv. 5).

13. **neque,** "but not."

14. **equites,** who had embarked in the eighteen weather-bound transports at *Ambleteuse* (see ch. xxii. 14). For their fate, see ch. xxviii.

capere, "to make the island"; cf. ch. xxxvi. 8, *portus capere.*

15. **Hoc unum . . . defuit.** Cæsar shared, with many other great men, "the absurd presumption in their own good fortune." Like Sulla, who styled himself Felix and his son Faustus, he believed in his "star"; cf. Bk. i. ch. xl.; *ib.*, ch. liii. He seems to have believed in fortune as a supreme power coequal with the gods, if not above them, in the guidance of events.

ad, "in regard to."

Chapter XXVII.

2. **miserunt . . . polliciti sunt,** asyndeton.

3. **imperasset.** See on ch. vi. 5, and ch. xxii. 5.

4. **quem . . . demonstraveram . . . praemissum.** Notice the difference between Latin and English idiom: "who, I pointed out, had been sent."

6. **oratoris modo,** "in the character of an envoy" (see on ch. xvi. 20).

7. **in vincula.** Commius' subsequent disloyalty (see note on ch. xxi. and Index of Names) makes it not improbable that this imprisonment was at his own desire. In that case he intended to await the result of the British resistance to Cæsar. On the submission of the Britons he was sent back to Cæsar (Bk. v. ch. xxii.)

9. **in multitudinem.** There seems to have been a certain amount of popular control amongst the Britons.

10. **ignosceretur** may be either impersonal, or personal with *hoc* supplied as subject, for *aliquid alicui ignosco* ("I pardon a thing to a person") is used. The acc. of the thing pardoned is used mostly with pronouns and simple adjectives like *omnia, multa,* and, with very rare exceptions, only when the dat. of the person is expressed. The dat. of the thing pardoned is the usual construction with nouns (cf. **imprudentiae,** below); but in this case the dat. of the person is not used as well—

Ignoscit { *meae* / *eius* } *stultitiae;* not { *mihi* / *ei* } *stultitiae.*

10. **quod . . . intulissent**, virtually oblique, "because, *as he said*, they had," &c. Cæsar's accusation is scarcely just. The Britons may well be excused for not grasping the fact that Cæsar, with his two legions and large fleet, came merely as "an emissary of civilisation."

Chapter XXVIII.

1. **post diem quartum quam**, "three days after," Aug. 27 (see note on ch. xxiii. 2). We should expect *post* (adverb) *die quarto quam*, "on the fourth day after that," but by attraction to **post** (as a preposition) the acc. is written. This is natural, for "after four days" = both *quarto post die* and *post quartum diem*. For a similar attraction, cf. the idiom in the Calendar, *ante tertium diem Nonas Feb.* = *tertio die ante Nonas Feb.* Here *ante*, and in the text **post**, are made to do double duty.

2. **supra.** Ch. xxiii.

3. **ex superiore portu.** See note on ch. xxii. 14.

5. **viderentur.** The transports were sighted somewhere off the *North Foreland* by Cæsar in his camp near *Deal*.

7. **inferiorem partem**, the south coast to the west of *Deal*, near *Sandgate*.

8. **propius.** See note on ch. ix. 2.

cum, "attended with," or "to their great peril."

suo. *Sui* which many read here would be objective gen., "with great danger to themselves."

9. **tamen** goes closely with **ancoris iactis**: "since these, in spite of anchors being cast, were being swamped with the waves."

10. **adversa nocte**, abl. abs. concessive, "although the night was stormy."

Chapter XXIX.

1. **Eadem nocte.** The night is that of Aug. 30. The moon was full at 3 A.M. of Aug. 31, which, according to Roman reckoning (the day began at sunrise), would still have been 30th.

ut, substantival (see on ch. v. 4).

qui dies, English idiom, "a day which."

2. **aestus maximos**, the spring tides, rising twenty or thirty feet These high tides would naturally be remarkable to Cæsar, who was accustomed to the Mediterranean, which, being an inland sea, has practically no tide.

nostrisque id . . . incognitum. Yet the Romans had had opportunity of studying the tides the year before, on the west coast

of Gaul, in the war with the Veneti; and also lately at *Boulogne*, where the tide rises twenty-five feet.

3. **quibus——curaverat.** In ch. xxii. Cæsar states that he embarked his troops on the eighty *onerariae naves;* whilst, as the text here stands, he states that he conveyed them across in the men-of-war. Either, as some think, Cæsar did not write the words **quibus ——curaverat**, or he wrote them carelessly. In Meusel's text they are bracketed.

quibus, instrumental abl.

4. **transportandum curaverat**, "he had had the army conveyed across." For the use of the gerundive expressing a purpose, cf. ch. xxii. 20.

in aridum, "on to the dry" (see on ch. xxiv. 5).

8. **reliquae**, emphatic position outside the **cum** clause.

11. **Neque . . . et**, "not . . . and besides"; or, more strongly, 'not only not . . . but also"; cf. ch. i. 21.

13. **quod——oportere**, "because all were agreed as to the necessity of wintering in Gaul."

omnibus, dative.

Chapter XXX.

5. **hoc . . . angustiora**, "all the narrower." *Hoc, eo, tanto, quo, quanto*, with a comparative, are abl. of measure, "by this much," &c. However, *hoc* and *eo* are often called causal abl. "for this reason"; but *tanto* and *quanto* could not be so classified, and they are probably all the same kind.

6. **factu**, supine in *-u* only used with adjectives, mostly with adjectives in *-bilis—e.g., mirabile dictu*, "wonderful to relate."

duxerunt, "considered."

rebellione, not a "rebellion," but a "renewal of war."

7. **commeatu**, abl. of separation; so **reditu**, below.

rem, "the campaign."

Chapter XXXI.

2. **ex eventu navium**, "after the fate of his ships."

ex eo quod . . . intermiserant. We should say in English, "after their failure."

3. **fore id—— suspicabatur**, "began to suspect that what did actually happen would be the case."

3. **ad omnes casus**, "for all emergencies."

5. **quae . . . naves.** In Latin, when the relative clause comes first, the antecedent frequently is placed in it.

6. **aere**, "bronze," used largely instead of iron.

8. **summo studio**, "with a will."

9. **administraretur**, impersonal.

amissis, concessive.

reliquis——effecit, lit., "he brought it about that by means of the rest it should be suitably sailed"—*i.e.*, "made the rest seaworthy." **reliquis** (emphatic position) is abl. of means or instrument.

Chapter XXXII.

1. **frumentatum**, supine in *-um* after verb of motion, as always to express purpose.

2. **neque . . . interposita**, "no suspicion of war up to that time having arisen."

3. **pars . . . pars**, asyndeton, making a stronger contrast.

5. **statione.** See on ch. iv. 11. It generally consisted of a cohort (one-half relieving the other) at each of the four gates of the camp.

6. **ferret**, "than was usual": the subjunct. is suboblique. In direct speech it would be indic.—*e.g.*, Bk. vi. ch. vii., *maiore strepitu . . . quam . . . populi Romani fert consuetudo.*

in ea parte . . . quam in partem. See on ch. vii. 1.

7. **fecisset**, suboblique.

8. **novi**, partitive gen. of neuter adjective used as noun; cf. *in alto, in aridum.* Remember, *aliquid novi*, but *aliquod novum.*

10. **in stationem . . . succedere**, "to go on duty."

armari, middle use of pass., "to arm themselves;" cf. ch. xvii. 5.

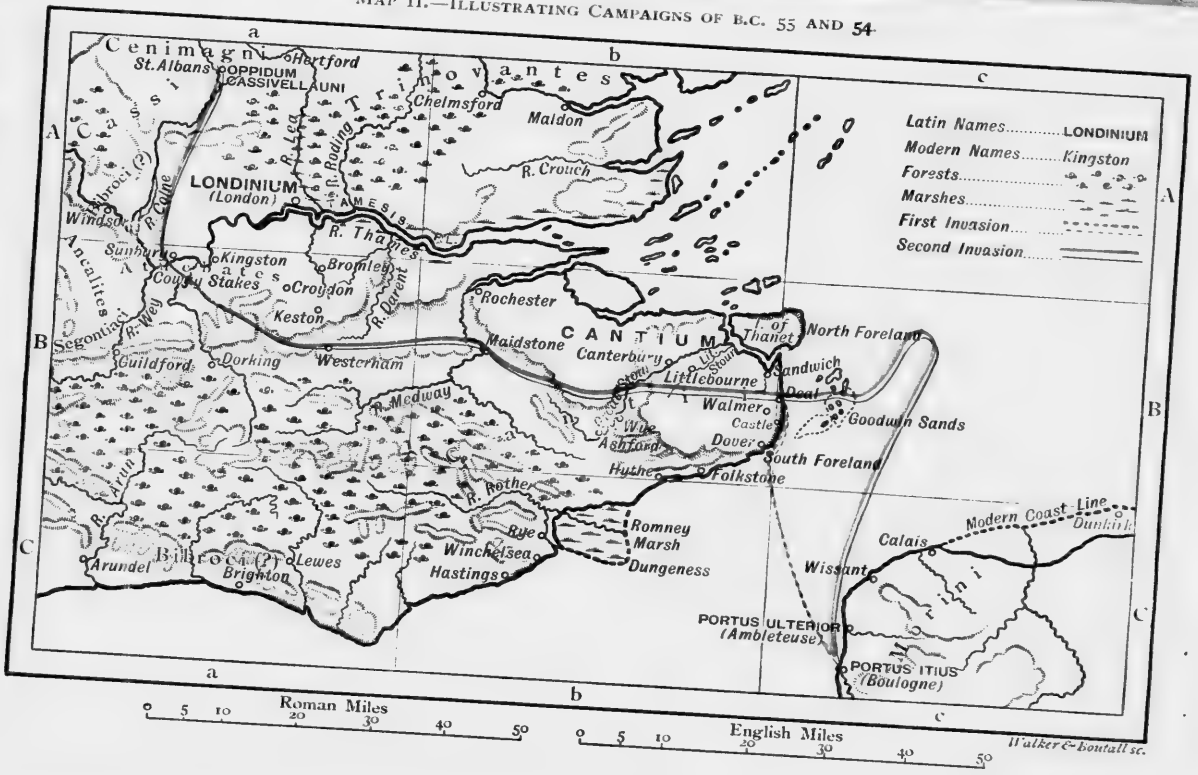
12. **conferta——coici.** We might say, "that the legion was crowded together and was being subjected to a cross-fire."

16. **delituerant**, *delitesco.*

tum dispersos——perturbaverant. The language in this sentence is extremely condensed. Our English idiom would run somewhat as follows: "Our men were scattered, and, having dropped their arms, were busy in cutting the corn, when the enemy had suddenly attacked them. A few had been killed; the rest, with wavering ranks, had fallen into confusion, and had at the same time been surrounded by cavalry and chariots." This is far from being a literal translation.

Map II.—Illustrating Campaigns of B.C. 55 and 54

MAP II.—ILLUSTRATING CAMPAIGNS OF B.C. 55 AND 54



that by means
le the rest sea-
means or instru-

n, as always to

up to that time

ontrast.
isted of a co-
r gates of the

aboblique. In
maiore strepitu

ii. 1.

noun; cf. *in*
d novum.

ves;" cf. ch.

e legion was
-fire."

ge in this sen-
ld run some-
ying dropped
e enemy had
he rest, with
he same time
r from being

ve clause comes

18. **equitatu atque essedis**, abl. of means or instrument.

19. **circumdederant.** The word has two constructions: (a) *circumdare* (to surround) *oppidum muro* (abl.), as here; and (b) *circumdare* (to throw round) *oppido* (dat.) *murum.*

Chapter XXXIII.

1. **ex essedis pugnae.** See on ch. xvi. 15.

3. **cum insinuaverunt**, iterative (see on ch. i. 10).

Essedum.

5. **pedibus.** See on ch. ii. 7.

proeliantur. Tacitus, in his book on Britain (*Agricola*, xii.), remarks, that of the two men in each chariot the man of noble birth drove, and the dependant fought. This arrangement is the reverse of the old Greek style in Homeric days.

8. **mobilitatem . . . stabilitatem**, asyndeton, to increase the force of the contrast.

10. **incitatos . . . sustinere**, "check their horses at full speed."

11. **brevi**=*brevi tempore.*

per, "along."

12. **consuerint**=*consueverint.* The perfect is used with a present meaning.

Chapter XXXIV.

3. **constiterunt . . . receperunt**, asyndeton.

se receperunt, "recovered." Remember the two meanings of this phrase, "retreat" and "recover."

5. **alienum**, "unfavourable."

8. **continuos complures dies**, "for several days continuously."

9. **quae**, consecutive.

a pugna. Elsewhere in this book we have the simple abl.

13. **sui liberandi.** See on ch. xiii. 14.

si . . . expulissent, "if they drove." The Latin tense, as usual, is more accurate.

Chapter XXXV.

2. **ut . . . effugerent.** *Ut* is substantival.

celeritate, abl. of means or instrument, not, of course, abl. of manner, which would require an epithet.

7. **tanto spatio.** See on ch. x. 5.

quantum . . . potuerunt, lit., "as much as they could accomplish by running and strength"—*i.e.*, "as far as their running powers allowed."

Chapter XXXVI.

3. **continentem,** Gaul.

4. **propinqua die aequinoctii,** "the next day [being the day] of the equinox"—*i.e.*, September 24.

infirmis——subiciendam, "as his ships were not strong, the voyage ought not to be exposed to stormy weather."

8. **eosdem quos,** often *eosdem ac.*

portus capere. Cf. *insulam capere,* ch. xxvi. 14.

Chapter XXXVII.

1. **Quibus**—*i.e.*, the two detached transports.

4. **non ita magno,** "not very great."

5. **orbe,** a formation in a circle corresponding to the modern hollow square. The officers, wounded, non-combatants, &c., remained in the centre. This formation was usually adopted in case of emergency; cf. Bk. v. ch. xxxiv. 12.

8. **auxilio,** dat. of purpose or predicate.

9. **amplius horis,** abl. of comparison, representing *quam horas,* acc. of duration. The more idiomatic phrase is *amplius horas,* as *amplius* is used with numbers without *quam* or abl. of comparison; cf. ch. xii. 2, *amplius octingentos.*

Chapter XXXVIII.

2. **rebellionem.** See on ch. xxx. 6.

3. **quo se reciperent,** "to retreat to."

4. quo perfugio. The antecedent is **paludum,** but **quo** is attracted to **perfugio.**

5. in potestatem . . . venerunt, "submitted to."

Q. Titurius et L. Cotta. See ch. xxii. 18.

13. supplicatio. The *supplicatio* was a public service of intercession or thanksgiving at times of great national peril or joy. As a rule it only lasted three or four days, but at the end of his second campaign Cæsar had a fifteen days' *supplicatio* decreed, and now even this was exceeded. Obviously the crossing of the Rhine and the invasion of Britain struck the Roman imagination, for a twenty days' *supplicatio* seems out of all proportion to his real achievements this year. See note at the end of ch. xiv.

BOOK V.[1]

CHAPTER I.

1. L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio. 54 B.C.

discedens, "when in the act of departing."

2. in Italiam—*i.e.*, Italy north of the Rubicon, or Gallia Citerior. He could not enter Italy proper without losing his *imperium*. He went to this part of his jurisdiction every year to hold the assizes (see note on **conventus,** below), and also to keep in touch with home politics.

quotannis. See on Bk. iv. ch. i. 9.

3. legatis, eight in number, in command of one legion each.

4. aedificandas . . . curent. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxii. 20. Notice the mixture of strict and vivid sequence.

5. modum, "build."

6. subductiones, governed by **ad.** Ancient ships were beached, and not left at anchor. The disaster to his fleet on the British coast had taught Cæsar the necessity of making this process easier.

humiliores, "lower" in the bulwarks and "shallower" in the hold. The word, of course, agrees with *naves*, understood.

7. nostro mari, the Mediterranean.

id. *Sc. facit.*

8. minus magnos . . . fluctus refers to the short choppy waves of the English Channel. These are here attributed to the "changing currents." Cæsar's statement here as to the comparative size of the

[1] Unless another book is mentioned, the reference is to this book.

waves in the Channel and the Mediterranean is criticised as incorrect.

11. **actuarias**, predicative, "able to be rowed"—*i.e.*, not dependent on sails alone.

fieri. Notice the construction of *impero* with a *passive* verb.

13. **ex Hispania**—*i.e.*, metals, and "esparto" grass for ropes.

conventibus. These were proconsular courts or assizes, that the governor of a province held every year towards winter, for the administration of justice. It was to a *conventus* that the town-clerk of Ephesus referred (*Acts* xix. 38): "But if ye inquire anything concerning other matters, it shall be determined in a lawful assembly."

15. **Pirustis**. They had many years before aided Rome, and had been rewarded with freedom from taxation.

16. **civitatibus milites imperat**, "levies soldiers on the states."

18. **nihil . . . publico factum consilio**, the usual excuse.

20. **omnibus rationibus**, ablative.

satisfacere, absolute use, "to give satisfaction."

24. **arbitros**, "arbitrators."

litem aestiment, "to assess the damage."

poenam, "compensation."

CHAPTER II.

2. **revertitur**—*i.e.*, from Illyricum.

4. **in**, "in the midst of," "in spite of."

5. **cuius**. We should expect *quod*. Either this is a case of relative attraction, which is very rare in Latin, or *naves* must be supplied with **cuius** as object of **demonstravimus**.

6. **neque——possint**, "and were within a few days of being launched." In this construction **abesse** is impersonal, **multum** adverbial, **ab eo** refers to the **quin** clause. For **quin**, see on Bk. iv. ch. vii. 5. Instead of **quin**, we should logically expect *ut* substantival here, the negative idea in **quin** being redundant.

9. **portum Itium**. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 5.

commodissimum . . . traiectum. He had found it the best by experience the year before.

10. **circiter milium passuum xxx**—*i.e.*, in English mileage, 27 miles, 1020 yards. The Roman mile was 1618 yards.

12. **militum**, partitive gen. with **quod**.

14. **neque . . . que**. See on Bk. iv. ch. i. 21; xxix. 11.

concilia. These were assemblies convoked by Cæsar for dis-

cussion and passing of laws. They are to be distinguished from the *concilium totius Galliae*, or council of all Gaul, a purely native institution, where every city of Gaul was represented. Some authorities think that the word is here used in its common sense of "council of war," which was attended by the commander, staff, and chief centurions, and held before the *praetorium* or headquarters of the Roman camp.

CHAPTER III.

2. **supra.** Bk. iv. ch. x.

4. **Indutiomarus et Cingetorix.** Indutiomarus was father-in-law of Cingetorix.

5. **alter**, Cingetorix.

6. **in officio**, "in allegiance."

7. **quaeque —— gererentur**, indirect question, or, according to others, a relative clause in which the subjunct. is suboblique, due to **ostendit**, the clause being part of Cingetorix's assertion.

15. **privatim**, owing to its position, becomes practically an adjective. Livy, vi. 39, 6, is generally quoted as a parallel, *maximo privatim periculo, nulli publice emolumento.*

16. **civitati**, opposed to **privatim.**

possent, suboblique.

17. **mittit**—*i.e.*, Indutiomarus.

18. **Sese —— laberetur**, a plausible excuse, which Cæsar saw through.

20. **discessu**, causal ablative.

laberetur, "should fall away," *i.e.*, "revolt."

23. **fidei**, "protection."

CHAPTER IV.

8. **principibus . . . convocatis . . . hos.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xii. 4; xxii. 10.

9. **cum . . . tum**, "both . . . and."

10. **magni**, locative used of price, "it was of great importance."

interesse, impersonal infinit. of *interest;* to be distinguished from the personal use of *interesse*, "to be present at"; cf. Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 8.

11. **suos**, of course, refers to **eius**—*i.e.*, Cingetorix.

cuius . . . perspexisset, subjunct. due to **cuius** causal, "since his."

12. **graviter tulit**, "took it ill."
13. **suam — minui**, explanatory of **id**. The sentence is unnecessary to the sense, and is bracketed in Meusel's text.
gratiam, "popularity."
qui . . . fuisset, concessive, "though he had been."
14. **inimico in nos animo**, abl. of description.
hoc dolore, "owing to resentment at this."

CHAPTER V.

6. **numero**, "in number," abl. of respect; cf. **loco in obsidum loco** below, *modo* in *oratoris modo*.
8. **in se fidem.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 13; xvi. 15. With *in se, erga se*, the construction is common.
9. **loco** is practically a preposition; cf. *modo*, Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 11; xxvii. 6.

CHAPTER VI.

1. **Dumnorix.** The name is said to be the Latinised form of Domun-rig, which means King of the World.
ante, Bk. i. chs. iii., xviii.-xx., where we find Cæsar pardoning Dumnorix—who is described as popular, active, and unscrupulous—at the intercession of his brother, Divitiacus. Cæsar always kept a watchful eye upon him afterwards, and never trusted him.
3. **cupidum . . . cupidum**, emphasis gained by repetition (see on Bk. iv. ch. xix. 13).
magni animi, magnae . . . auctoritatis, gen. of quality or description; *sc. esse*.
4. **Accedebat huc quod.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xxii. 14.
6. **regnum deferri**, "that the kingship was being offered." This may have been true, as Cæsar may have wished to win Dumnorix' loyalty by kindness, and appointed him as a dependent sovereign, like Commius (Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 16), and Cavarinus (ch. liv. 5, below). But Cæsar seems to imply that it was a fiction on Dumnorix' part.
7. **neque**, "and yet . . . not."
11. **navigandi**, gen. with **insuetus**. This genitive was perhaps originally the locative (*e.g.*, Lucretius and Vergil use *animi*, "in mind"), which afterwards became identified with the genitive and extended in use.
timeret. The virtually oblique subjunct. here is specially expressive, as Cæsar clearly saw the alleged cause to be a mere excuse.

12. **diceret** is a common and natural, but not strictly logical, expression for *ut dicebat, impediretur*. The alleged cause is really contained not in **diceret** but in **impediri**. What is meant by *religionibus* is not stated—probably omens and sacrifices.

14. **hortari coepit**. This is not a violation of the rule given in note on Bk. iv. ch. xiv. 13, as **hortari** is *active* in meaning.

15. **metu territare**, historic infin., with Dumnorix as subject. The terseness of the language expresses passion.

fieri breaks off into *or. obl.*, dependent on the idea of "saying in **territare**; cf. ch. xxxi. 3.

ut, substantival.

18. **traductos necaret**, "to take across and kill."

interponere, a return to the historic infin. Trans., "he gave assurances to the rest."

19. **ex usu**, "to be in accordance with the interest of"; *sc. esse*.

Chapter VII.

Cæsar has been criticised for his harsh treatment of a patriot chief, but if we can believe Cæsar's record of the facts, Dumnorix, by constant intrigues, rendered his execution a necessity. It would have been very unwise to permit the loyalty of the Haedui to be tampered with.

4. **quid**, cognate acc.

sibi, Cæsar.

6. **commoratus** = *commorans* (see on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 12).

Corus, *Caurus* or *Chorus*, N.W. wind.

8. **dabat operam**, "took care."

11. **impeditis**, "being occupied."

15. **retrahi**. See on ch. i. 11.

16. **pro sano**, masc., "like a sane man."

17. **arbitratus**. See on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 12.

qui, causal.

18. **suorum fidem**, "the protection of his friends."

19. **liberum se liberaeque civitatis**. The Haedui were, it is true, "allies of Rome," but scarcely "free" from the Roman point of view. Anyhow, it was impossible for Cæsar to tolerate Dumnorix' intrigues. If we condemn his execution, we must condemn the whole conquest of Gaul.

20. **ut erat imperatum**. Cæsar frankly takes the responsibility for the act.

Chapter VIII.

1. **Labieno.** He was left as the most trusted of the *legati.*

4. **pro tempore et pro re,** "as time and circumstances demanded."

5. **pari . . . quem** = *eodem . . . quem.*

6. **ad solis occasum.** The time of year is fixed by the dates of letters from Quintus Cicero to his brother as the end of July or the beginning of August. Napoleon III., in his *Histoire de Jules César,* by an ingenious computation of tides based on facts drawn from Cæsar's description, fixes the date as July 20, about 8 P.M.

7. **Africo,** S.W. wind.

8. **longius delatus.** The fleet was carried too far in a N.E. direction, so as to have the *North Foreland* on the left. At the change of tide, and by dint of rowing, it reached the spot of the landing in the previous year, probably between *Walmer* and *Deal* (see on Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 5).

11. **caperet.** Cf. Bk. iv. ch. xxvi. 14; xxxvi. 8.

13. **vectoriis gravibusque navigiis,** "with boats built for freight, *and so,* heavy."

18. **annotinis,** "of the year before." For the adjectival termination, cf. *crastinus, pristinus, diutinus.*

19. **quas sui quisque commodi fecerat,** "which they severally had chartered for their own service." **Sui commodi,** gen. of description; cf. *naves deiciendi operis,* Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 27, and for the whole sentence, cf. such a phrase as *Gallos suae ditionis fecit,* "he made the Gauls belong to his own jurisdiction." The genitive forms the predicate.

quisque, merely used to emphasise **sui.** Certain of the wealthy officers on Cæsar's staff had private ships for their *own special* service. Of course **quisque** must not be taken literally to mean "every man."

amplius octingentae. See on Bk. iv. ch. x. 3.

20. **in superiora loca,** farther "up country."

Chapter IX.

3. **cohortibus decem,** not *una legione,* because the cohorts were taken from different legions.

4. **tertia vigilia.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xxiii. 2.

5. **veritus navibus,** "fearing for his ships." For the present use of the perf. part., see on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 12.

5. **molli**, "sandy," or "shingly." The adjectives are predicative, expressed in English idiom by "a" instead of "the," "on a sandy and open shore."

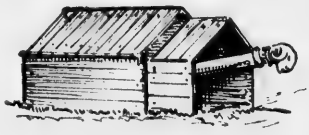
8. **equitatu atque essedis.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xxiv. 3.

9. **ad flumen**, either the *Great Stour* or the *Little Stour*. Landing at *Deal*, Cæsar would naturally reach the *Little Stour* first; but this river is now a mere ditch. If it was so then, Cæsar may have omitted to mention crossing it. If Cæsar landed at *Romney Marsh*, it would be the *Great Stour*.

ex loco superiore. The Britons were on the north bank, which was higher.

14. **rari**, "in small parties."

16. **testudine facta.** There were two kinds of *testudo:* (1) *arietaria*, a wooden movable shed or pent-house, covered with hide, to protect soldiers who were working the artillery, the battering-ram, or mining operations; (2) a formation of soldiers, with shields locked above their heads forming a complete covering, under shelter of which the fortification could be approached and demolished, or, as here, earth be brought up, and an *agger*, or counter-earthwork, formed. See Frontispiece.



Testudo arietaria.

18. **fugientes**, object of **prosequi**.

20. **munitioni castrorum tempus.** An ordinary camp for a brief encampment would be fortified in about three hours.

Chapter X.

1. **Postridie eius diei mane**, simply "the next morning"; **eius diei** is superfluous.

tripertito does not refer to formation, but implies that they went by three different roads.

3. **extremi**, the rear of the enemy.

7. **sustinerent . . . possent**, suboblique.

9. **magnum esse incommodum**, emphatic order.

Chapter XI.

3. **sic ut**, "to this extent that," a limitative use of the phrase; so *ita . . . ut*, often with the meaning of "while . . . yet."

4. **tamen** answers **amissis . . . navibus**, which is a concessive abl. abs.

5. **fabros deligit.** Accompanying every legion there was a corps of *fabri* under the command of a *praefectus fabrum;* but Cæsar does not seem here to be referring to these professional engineers, but to soldiers picked from the ordinary ranks with a skill for engineering. Every Roman soldier was something of an engineer. He was constantly engaged in making camps, forts, bridges, &c.

7. **iis legionibus**, abl. of means or instrument.

quae sint. Some editions have *sunt*, but the subjunctive (sub. oblique) is required.

8. **multae operae ac laboris**, gen. of quality or description.

13. **easdem . . . quas ante**, "the same as before."

14. **eodem**—*i.e.*, to the *Stour*.

16. **summa**, a noun.

Cassivellauno. Latinised form of Caswallon. The name is said to mean "king of the league."

cuius fines, *Middlesex*.

18. **flumen quod . . . Tamesis.** The relative here is not attracted to agreement with the predicate as in Bk. iv. ch. i. 1.

a mari, from *Deal*, where he landed, to the place where he crossed the *Thames*, near *Sunbury*.

20. **continentia**, "uninterrupted."

Chapter XII.

1. **quos——dicunt.** We might say, "whom oral tradition represents as indigenous in the island."

natos depends upon **prodi'tum** (*esse* being understood in each case). As a matter of fact, the Celtic Britons were not the first inhabitants, but were preceded by a black-haired race of Basques or Iberians (see Introduction, p. xiii).

3. **qui——pervenerunt**, "who are nearly all called by the same names as the states from which they sprang before their migration to Britain." Take as instances the Atrebates (see on Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 16), Belgæ, and Parisii, names occurring both in Gaul and Britain. Notice, as often, the principal idea is expressed by the participle **orti**—lit., "from which having sprung they arrived thither." The whole sentence is condensed for *isdem nominibus quibus civitates [appellantur] ex quibus orti*, &c.

7. **Gallicis consimilia**—naturally, as both races were Celtic. These buildings are said by Strabo to have been "large, built of planks

and wattled reeds, circular in shape, with a high roof." In ch. xliii. they are said to be thatched (*stramentis tectae*).

8. **aut aere,** bracketed in Meusel's text.

nummo aureo. Cicero, in his Letters (*Ad Fam.* vii. 7, § 1; *Ad Att.* iv. 16, § 7), says that there was not a scrap of gold to be found in the island. Strabo, however, and Tacitus include gold and silver among the resources of the country. Mommsen states that discoveries prove the existence of a gold coinage in Britain at a date prior to Cæsar's invasion. Silver and copper coinage came in considerably later.

9. **taleis ferreis,** "iron bars," a common form of primitive coinage.

examinatis, "fixed by standard."

10. **plumbum album,** "tin." In very early times the Phœnicians are said to have fetched tin from Britain; but see Introduction, p. xi. *Plumbum nigrum* is "lead."

mediterraneis, "inland." This must refer to *Cornwall;* but, as a matter of fact, the tin mines were on the coast.

11. **maritimis,** *Sussex.* The railings round St Paul's Cathedral were made of *Sussex* iron.

12. **aere,** "bronze."

Materia, "timber."

13. **fagum.** A curious statement. Either the *fagus,* as some believe, was our chestnut, or else Cæsar's statement is based on the accident of his not seeing any beeches in *Kent* and *Middlesex.*

abietem must refer to the silver fir, which has been introduced into England in modern times, not to the Scotch pine.

Leporem . . . putant. Primitive religious faiths constantly forbade the use of certain animals as food, a survival of animal worship. The hare was forbidden as an article of food by the Mosaic law.

15. **animi voluptatisque causa,** "for fancy and pleasure."

Loca, "climate."

16. **remissioribus frigoribus,** "the seasons of cold being less severe." Tacitus says of Britain, *asperitas frigorum abest* (*Agr.* xii.)

Chapter XIII.

1. **natura triquetra,** "triangular in shape."

2. **ad,** "on the coast of."

4. **inferior,** *sc. angulus—i.e., Cornwall.* Cæsar's idea of Britain must have been something of the nature of the diagram on the next page.

5. **ad Hispaniam.** Like Tacitus (*Agr.* xxxiv.), Cæsar places Spain west of England and Ireland.

6. **Hibernia**, also *Iuverna*, Greek Ἰέρνη; hence *Erin*.

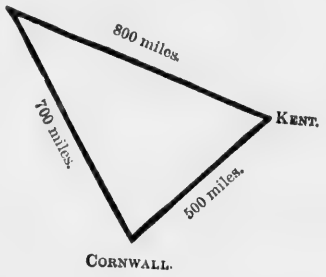
dimidio, abl. of measure.

7. **pari spatio**, abl. of description; **transmissus** is gen., dependent on it.

pari . . . atque. See on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 14.

8. **In hoc medio cursu**, "half-way across."

9. **Mona.** The name is applied both to *Anglesea* and the *Isle of Man*. Cæsar's description can hardly apply to *Anglesea*.



obiectae. These islands, to which Cæsar vaguely refers, must be the *Hebrides* and other islands off the west coast of Scotland.

11. **sub brumam**, "just at the time of the winter solstice"—*i.e.*, Dec. 21. *Bruma* is from *brevima* (an old form of superlative; cf. *infimus*), *sc. dies*, and is here used in its original sense.

12. **nisi**, "save for the fact that," a very compressed form of expression = *nisi quod*.

ex aqua—*i.e.*, the *clepsydra* or water-clock, somewhat like an hour-glass with water instead of sand.

13. **breviores.** In summer, the farther north you go, the longer the days. Pliny says that the longest day in Italy contains fifteen hours, in Britain, seventeen. In Scotland it is over eighteen.

15. **est obiecta**, "lies opposite."

16. **angulus**—*i.e.*, the lower end of the northern side (already referred to in line 2 as the eastern angle). The upper end faces only the Ocean.

17. **Hoc**, *sc. latus*.

18. **vicies centum** = 2000. Thus the ugly *duorum milium milium passuum* is avoided.

milium, gen. of description, with **vicies centum** qualifying it.

Chapter XIV.

1 **humanissimi —— incolunt.** Shakspeare (*Henry VI.*, Part ii. Act iv. sc. 7) has—

> *Lord Say.* You men of Kent,—
> *Dick.* What say you of Kent?
> *Say.* Nothing but this; 'tis *bona terra, mala gens.*
> *Cade.* Away with him, away with him! he speaks Latin.
> *Say.* Hear me but speak, and bear me where you will.
> Kent, in the Commentaries Cæsar writ,
> Is term'd the civil'st place of all this isle.

2. **maritima . . . Interiores.** It is natural that higher civilisation should be found on the coast than in the interior.

6. **hoc**, abl. of measure, "all the" (see on Bk. iv. ch. xxx. 5). It might be taken in agreement with **aspectu.**

capillo . . . promisso, abl. of description.

8. **Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes**, "ten *or* (notice difference of idiom) twelve men have wives in common"—*i.e.*, 10 or 12 men had 10 or 12 wives in common. The distributive numeral refers to the different groups or societies of ten or a dozen men that had community of wives.

10. **eorum habentur.** The object of the system seems to have been to ensure children for every one.

11. **quo**, adverb=*ad quos.*

deducta, the technical word for bringing a bride to her husband's home.

Chapter XV.

2. **ita . . . ut.** See on ch. xi. 3.

3. **fuerint . . . compulerint.** The perfect subjunct., like the perf. indic., is used as an aorist: (1) as here, in consecutive clauses, laying stress on the actual result rather than on the cause; (2) in prohibitions, *ne hoc feceris;* (3) in indirect questions with future participle, *rogavi quid facturi fuerint*, "I asked what they would have done."

5. **amiserunt.** The Roman cavalry is the subject.

spatio, of time, though, just below, of place.

9. **atque his**, "and these, too."

primis. The first cohorts contained the best men. All the men had to reach five feet ten inches in height.

10. **cum —— constitissent**, "these having halted a very short distance apart." *Inter se* goes with **intermisso.**

12. **per medios**, between the two cohorts.

13. **tribunus militum.** See Introduction, p. xxiii.

Chapter XVI.

1. **Toto——dimicaretur.** We should say, "all through a battle like this, which was fought."

2. **intellectum**, "it was clear to the onlookers"; **nostros**, "our legionary soldiers."

3. **cedentes**, accusative.

possent . . . auderent, suboblique subjunct., because dependent on acc. and infin., NOT the common virtually oblique subjunct. in causal clause, "because, *as they said*."

4. **ad**, "to cope with."

6. **illi**, the enemy.

consulto, "purposely."

7. **removissent**, "drawn off." In order to appreciate this passage, read carefully Bk. iv. ch. xxiii. on the British mode of fighting from chariots. The British chariots charged the Roman cavalry, and having drawn them off a little from the legionary soldiers, the combatants leaped down from their chariots and fought on foot, leaving the chariot with its driver as a means of retreat or pursuit, according to the issue of the fight.

8. **dispari**, to the Roman cavalry, because the British chariot system combined the advantages of infantry and cavalry.

Equestris —— inferebat, bracketed in Meusel's text. The meaning is not very clear, but seems to be this: the battle was, as has been said, an unequal contest for the Romans fighting on horse against the chariot system; but (**autem**) the nature of a *purely cavalry* engagement (**equestris** emphatic by position) entailed precisely the same danger (opposed to **dispari proelio**) for pursuers and pursued—*i.e.*, neither side had the advantage of chariots for pursuit or flight. The statement is general, for the present engagement is not an *equestre proelium* (see next note).

9. **et cedentibus et insequentibus.** This sentence, like the rest, seems quite general; other editors, however, make it particular: "to the Romans, when they retreated or pursued," or (abl. abs., *sc. illis*), "when the Britons retreated or pursued." It would make excellent sense to say that this kind of fighting "brought equal danger to the Romans whether in retreat or pursuit," on account of the superiority which the chariots gave to the Britons; but it is hard to extract it from the Latin. *Haec enim ratio proelii* would be required to give this sense, instead of **equestris autem ratio proelii**.

10. **Accedebat huc.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 6. The substantival clause, which is practically the subject of a phrase like this,

can be expressed either by *quod* with the indicative or by *ut* substantival with the subjunctive.

11. **stationesque dispositas,** "scattered outposts" of chariots with drivers.

12. **alios . . . alii,** "one *party* . . . another *party*."
exciperent, "covered."
integrique, "and so fresh."

13. **succederent,** "relieved."

Chapter XVII.

4. **tres legiones,** an extraordinary number for the purpose.

6. **pabulatores,** not the whole legions, but parties sent out from them.

sic uti —— absisterent, "with such impetuosity as not to shrink from attacking the standards and legions"—*i.e.*, after routing the **pabulatores.** Others take **sic uti** as limitative—*i.e.*, "they routed the foragers, and yet at the same time did not leave off attacking the legions." Others would read *sicubi* and omit *non*, "whenever they (the **pabulatores**) quitted their standards and legions."

10. **sui colligendi.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 14.

12. **auxilia,** contingents sent to Cassivellaunus from other tribes.

13. **summis . . . copiis,** emphatic order, "in *full* force."

Chapter XVIII.

2. **uno omnino loco,** "only at one place at all." Where this ford was is the subject of dispute. Some have put it as far down the river as *Westminster*, others as far up as *Wallingford*. All we gather from Cæsar is that it was eighty miles from his landing-place. This distance, by various computations, can be made to suit different places: *Wallingford*, *Coway*, *Sunbury*, *Petersham*, *Kingston*, are all set down as the spot. Probably, however, it was above *Teddington*, where the river ceases to be tidal. The only ford now is at *Sunbury*, but the bed of the river may have changed. At *Coway Stakes*, above *Walton Lock*, below *Sunbury*, up to the end of last century there were some stakes, of which one is preserved in the British Museum (see next page). The Venerable Bede, in his history,[1]

[1] "Thence he proceeded to the river Thames, where an immense multitude of the enemy had posted themselves on the farther side of the river, under the command of Cassobellaun, and fenced the bank of the river and almost all the ford under water with sharp stakes, the remains of which are to be seen to this day, each apparently about the thickness of a man's thigh, and being cased with lead, were fixed immovably in the bottom of the river."—Bk. i. ch. ii.

referring apparently to these stakes, which existed in his time (he died 734 A.D.), states that they were the same that "Cassobellaun" drove in to obstruct Cæsar's march. If they existed up to Bede's time, it is not impossible that they continued to exist up to the end of the eighteenth century, and hence the stake in the British Museum may possibly be one of those sunk by Cassivellaunus. It must be added, however, that some authorities believe them to have been part of a fishing weir, and it would be a marvellous thing for wooden stakes to remain in a river so long a time. In support of *Coway Stakes* being the spot where Cæsar crossed, it may be stated that there is near the place a village called *Halli***ford** and the remains of a Roman camp. The question cannot be definitely decided—the data are too few.

9. **ea . . . eo**, "such . . . such."

cum, "though." The Roman soldier must have been an expert at fording. To have succeeded in fording at such a depth in the face of an enemy seems almost incredible.

11. **dimitterent**, "abandoned."

Coway Stake in Brit. Mus.

Chapter XIX.

1. **supra**, end of ch. xvii.

4. **locis**. See on Bk. iv. ch. ii. 7.

10. **hoc metu** "fear of this"; cf. *hoc dolore*, ch. iv. 14.

11. **relinquebatur**, "the only course left to Cæsar was."

13. **labore atque itinere**, "by means of hard marching," a hendiadys.

Chapter XX.

1. **Trinovantes**, said by Professor Rhys to mean "battle-stabbers" or "battle-spearers." Their surrender to Cæsar destroyed all hopes of British success.

5. **ipse**, asyndeton, English idiom, "whilst he himself."

6. **sese** is object, with another *se* understood as subject.

7. **ab iniuria Cassivellauni**. The gen. is subjective, "from ill-treatment at the hands of Cæsar.

Chapter XXI.

2. **Cenimagni——Cassi.** The exact position of these small tribes belonging to this part of Britain is uncertain. See, however, Index of Names.

4. **oppidum Cassivellauni** probably occupied the site of Verulamium (*St Albans*).

6. **Oppidum.** The circular entrenchments found in many parts of England are probably old British "towns" from which the forest has disappeared, leaving only the *vallum* and *fossa*, though they are generally called Roman camps.

Chapter XXII.

3. **Cingetorix,** not the man of that name mentioned in ch. v.

5. **castra navalia,** protecting the fleet which had been drawn up on the beach, mentioned in ch. xi.

13. **neque multum,** *et non-multum.*

14. **extrahi,** "wasted." Cæsar had also political reasons for wishing to be closer home, as he had just heard of the death of his daughter Julia, who had married Pompey, and was a strong tie between them.

15. **vectigalis,** partitive gen. The tribute was never paid, as no troops were left behind to enforce it.

penderet, "was to pay," dubitative or deliberative subjunctive, as well as that of indirect question.

Chapter XXIII.

4. **commeatibus,** "crossings" or "relays."

Ac sic——reicerentur, "and so it happened, that out of so large a number of ships in the course of so many voyages, neither in this nor in the previous year was any transport ship at all missing; whilst of such as were sent back empty to him, namely, those belonging to the first relay after the soldiers had been landed and those which Labienus afterwards had had made, a very few made the harbour, and nearly all the rest were beaten back."

5. **uti,** with **desideraretur, caperent, reicerentur.**

7. **portaret,** like **remitterentur** below, due to relative (generic), "such as."

8. **remitterentur** properly only applies to the ships of the first relay, and not to those which Labienus had had built in Britain, which were not "sent *back*."

prioris commeatus, gen. of possession. Written in full, this sentence would run: *eae quae prioris commeatus erant et eae quas*, &c. It divides **ex iis quae** into two parts.

9. **postea**, ch. xi., after Cæsar had landed in Britain. Cæsar wishes to emphasise in this somewhat involved period that he had his usual wonderful good fortune, because, though he had lost ships when beached, and also when returning to Britain empty after landing the first batch of soldiers in Gaul, yet he never lost a single transport with soldiers on board.

12. **aequinoctium**, September 24. Yet Cæsar was still in Britain on 26th, for Cicero (*Ad Att.*, iv. 15, 10) says in a letter that he has just received letters from his brother Quintus, and Cæsar dated from the shores of Britain. The equinox must merely mean the season of the equinoctial gales.

13. **necessario . . . conlocavit**, "he was obliged to pack his men more closely."

14. **secunda —— vigilia**, "having weighed anchor at the beginning of the second watch" (about 9 P.M.); not "the second watch having begun when he had weighed anchor," which would require *cum solverat*.

CHAPTER XXIV.

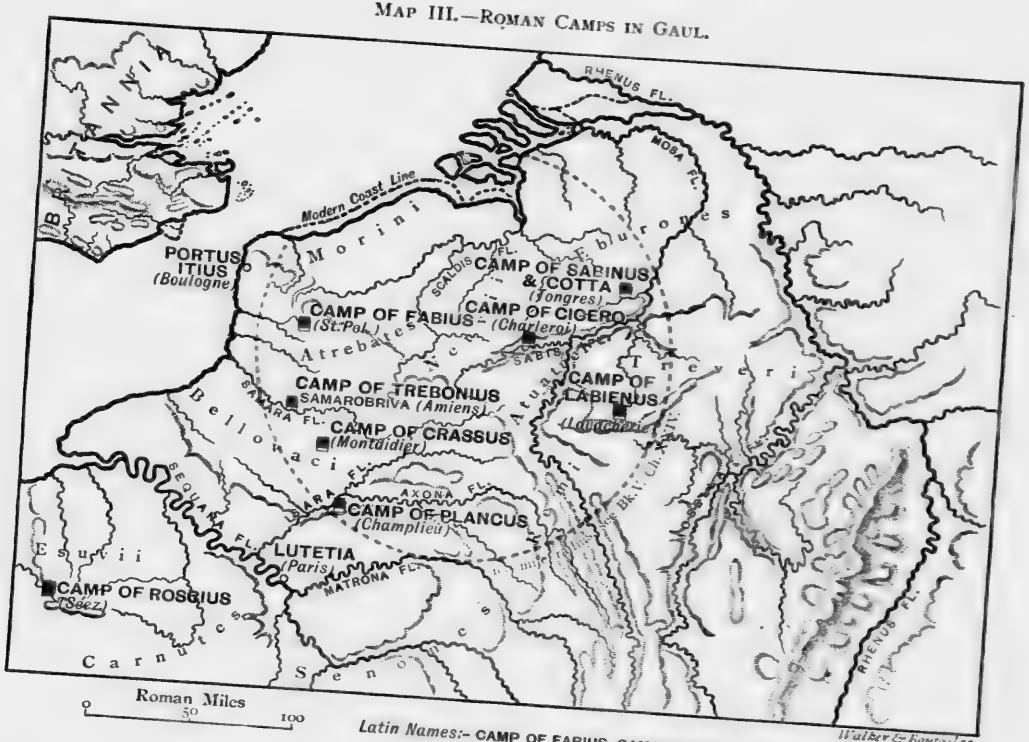
1. **concilioque Gallorum.** See on ch. ii. 14.

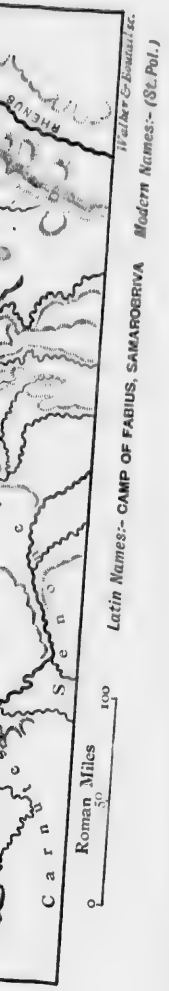
2. **frumentum . . . angustius provenerat**, "the harvest had been somewhat scanty."

5. **distribuere.** For the positions of these winter camps, study the map carefully.

LEGION.	LEGATE.	TRIBE.	MODERN SITE (approximate).
1	C. Fabius	Morini	*St Pol.*
1	Q. Cicero	Nervii	*Charleroi* (or *Namur*).
1	L. Roscius	Essuvii	*Séez.*
1	T. Labienus	Remi	*Lavacherie.*
1	M. Crassus	Bellovaci	*Montdidier.*
1	C. Trebonius		*Amiens* (Samarobriva).
1	L. Munatius Plancus		*Champlieu.*
1½	Q. Titurius Sabinus L. Aurunculeius Cotta	Eburones	*Tongres.*

MAP III.—ROMAN CAMPS IN GAUL.





8. **Bellovacis.** This is a correction for *Belgis* of the MSS. It seems necessary, as three of the tribes previously mentioned were stationed amongst the Belgæ, a general name for the tribes on the N.E. of Gaul. Cæsar would not, therefore, make special mention of them here.

10. **proxime,** "recently." This legion was the fourteenth, enrolled in 57 B.C.

16. **mederi** with dat., but *sanare* with acc.

19. **milibus passuum centum continebantur.** This probably means within a *radius* of 100 miles. If the statement means that no camp was more than 100 miles from another, it is inaccurate.

20. **quoad . . . cognovisset,** "until he learnt"; lit., "should have learnt" (see on Bk. iv. ch. vi. 5). In ch. xvii. 8, *quoad . . . egerunt* = "until they drove"; the English idiom uses the same tense to express "until they should have . . ." and "until they actually did . . ."

Chapter XXV.

2. **Huic,** indir. obj. to **restituerat,** with **locum** as direct obj.

3. **in se benevolentia.** See on ch. v. 8.

4. **singulari——usus,** "had found his services of particular assistance to him."

5. **Tertium——regnantem,** "who was in the third year of his reign"—lit., "who was reigning already during this the third year."

inimici, "personal enemies."

6. **multis . . . auctoribus,** abl. abs., "at the instigation of many."

8. **impulsu,** "influence."

10. **quorum——mittere,** "and to arrest and send to him the men by whose agency he had learnt Tasgetius was killed.

Chapter XXVI.

1. **Diebus . . . quindecim,** "during the fifteen days," but not duration of time.

4. **praesto fuissent,** "had presented themselves before." **Praesto** is an adverb.

5. **Indutiomari.** For the cause of his hostility, see ch. iv.

9. **desperata re,** "in despair."

11. **aliqui.** *Aliquis* is the usual form when no substantive is used.

11. **ex nostris——vellent.** It is remarkable that these words, by a strange coincidence, form two complete hexameters. As a rule, metrical prose is carefully avoided.

12. **habere——sperarent.** We should say, "they represented that they had communications to make as regards their mutual interests, from which they anticipated the possibility of an abatement of hostilities."

vellent . . . sperarent, suboblique.

13. **posse** has no future infinitive; hence the present after **sperarent.**

Chapter XXVII.

2. **ex Hispania,** adjectival; cf. *in se beneficiis,* and *in se iuris* below (see on Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 15).

3. **missu,** "at the sending"; cf. *coactu, iussu, iniussu, vocatu.*

5. **debere** depends on **confiteri.**

6. **stipendio,** abl. of separation.

quod Atuatucis. This **quod** is relative.

9. **numero,** abl. = *in numero.* So *obsidum loco.*

10. **fecerit.** Throughout this speech the vivid sequence is often used.

11. **suaque——multitudinem,** "that his own sovereignty was of such a limited kind that the people had no less power over him than he over the people."

14. **quod——potuerit,** explanatory of **causam.**

15. **Id se——quod,** "this he could easily prove from his own weakness, as . . ."

16. **imperitus rerum,** "inexperienced" (see on Bk. iv. ch. i. 5).

suis copiis, abl. of means or instrument. **Suis** is emphatic.

18. **oppugnandis,** dat. of purpose.

19. **alteri.** It is as well to state that most texts read here *alterae,* an old second declension form. Cæsar also uses *toto, nullo,* as datives. These instances are not sufficient authority for the constant use of these forms in modern Latin prose.

22. **Quibus——satisfecerit,** "since he had satisfied the claims of patriotism"—lit., "since he had satisfied them on the score of patriotism."

habere . . . rationem, "took account of."

23. **officii,** "his obligation."

monere, orare. Two verbs of the same meaning are often used in Latin to emphasise an idea, "he earnestly begged"; cf. *fundere*

et fugare, "to rout utterly." The asyndeton here gives additional emphasis; cf. *agere ferre*, "to plunder."

26. **biduo**, "in the course of two days."

Ipsorum esse consilium. Cæsar said, "The decision lies with you yourselves."

27. **eductos . . . deducere**, "to conduct them . . . and lead them."

31. **Quod cum faciat**, "in doing this."

32. **hibernis levetur**, "relieved of the burden of winter quarters."

33. **oratione**, a most plausible and seductive speech. In translating, turn it into *or. recta*. Notice the phrase *orationem habere*, "to make a speech."

Chapter XXVIII.

4. **quod**, explanatory of **hac re**.

6. **consilium**. A council of war contained the commander-in-chief, his *legati*, military tribunes, and the six centurions of the first cohort.

7. **L. Aurunculeius**, Cotta.

8. **primorum ordinum**. See Introduction, p. xxiv.

9. **iniussu**. See on *missu*, ch. xxvii. 3.

10. **quantasvis**, "of any size."

etiam Germanorum, "even" of Germans, who were, as soldiers, considered far more formidable than the Gauls. According to Ambiorix, a large body of them had crossed the Rhine.

11. **munitis hibernis**, abl. abs., "provided the winter camp was fortified."

rem esse testimonio quod, "the fact that . . was a proof." **Testimonio** is the ordinary dative of purpose, like *usui*, *dolori*, *auxilio*, *subsidio*, &c.

12. **ultro**, "to boot."

15. **quid esse**. For questions in *or. obl.*, see on Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 15.

levius, "more undignified."

auctore hoste, "on the advice of an enemy."

Chapter XXIX.

1. **Titurius**, Sabinus.

4. **Caesarem se arbitrari**, "that he (Sabinus) thought that Cæsar . . ." But Cæsar had not gone to Italy (Cisalpine Gaul) as usual. It is hard to believe that Sabinus did not know this.

6. **fuisse capturos**, "would have adopted."

7. **nostri**, "for us," objective gen. Remember that the forms *nostrum, vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, otherwise *nostri, vestri.*

venturos, "would not now be coming." Notice that, in secondary sequence, **si ille adesset . . . venturos** (*sc. esse*) is capable of representing three different conditional clauses of the direct speech:—

(1) *si aderit, venient* ("if he be present, they will come").

(2) *si adsit, veniant* ("if he were to be present, they would come").

(3) *si adesset, venirent* ("if he were now present, they would be coming").

In the text the sense shows that it represents (3).

8. **non hostem——spectare**, "what he looked at was not the suggestion of the enemy, but the plain fact." **Hostem auctorem**, like *capta urbs*, "the capture of the city."

9. **Ariovisti mortem.** In Bk. i. ch. liii. we read of the flight of Ariovistus from battle, but nowhere is the manner of his death recorded. Presumably he was captured and killed.

10. **ardere——extincta**, "Gaul, brought under the Roman sway, her military glory of the past extinguished, was blazing with wrath at the insults she had received."

12. **persuaderet.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 15. The subjunctive is used with a question in the third person, because in the direct the question was *Quis persuadeat?* "Who is to persuade?"

13. **descendisse**, "had resorted to."

14. **si nihil esset durius**, "if nothing unfortunate happened."

17. **Cottae——exitum**, "as to Cotta and the malcontents, what did their policy involve?"

19. **at certe**, "yet certainly." *At* can be used to mark an apodosis, *sed* cannot.

longinqua obsidione, abl. abs.

Chapter XXX.

This chapter is a good instance of the vivid style of writing.

1. **in utramque partem.** **In** has a distributive force (see on Bk. iv. ch. i. 11).

2. **primis ordinibus**=*centurionibus primorum ordinum* (see Introduction, p. xxiv).

Vincite, "have it so."

3. **et id** (*sc. dixit*). We should say "and then."

4. **qui terrear,** "to be terrified;" **qui** consecutive=*ut ego.* Notice the person of **terrear.**

gravissime ex vobis, "more than the rest of you."

5. **hi,** the soldiers.

si gravius quid, "if anything at all serious happen."

7. **communem——sustineant,** "would bear their share of the fortunes of war with the rest."

8. **non,** asyndeton, giving considerable force.

reiecti et relegati, "like utter outcasts." For the two verbs expressing one strong idea, see on ch. xxvii. 23.

Chapter XXXI.

1. **Consurgitur,** impersonal.

comprehendunt, by the hand.

3. **facilem esse.** See on ch. vi. 15.

4. **si modo,** "provided only."

6. **disputatione,** abl. of means or instrument; trans., "the question is debated at length."

dat . . . manus, "gives way." This is a metaphor from the formal action of surrender.

8. **vigiliis,** "in wakefulness."

9. **cum . . . circumspiceret,** "looking round."

quid, "(to see) what."

11. **Omnia——augeatur,** bracketed in Meusel's text. The sense is certainly not clear. Two interpretations are possible: (1) "Everything is devised to make it impossible to remain without danger, and, at the same time, by causing fatigue and sleeplessness to the troops, to increase the danger (of departure)." This would be a stricture on the utter incompetency of the generals. The use of **quare** is unnatural. (2) "All reasons are thought out and discussed why they cannot remain without danger, and why that danger is increased by the fatigue and sleeplessness of the troops." The sentence would then be either (*a*) an explanation of **consumitur vigiliis,** &c., or (*b*) else a description of the efforts of Sabinus' party to reconcile the troops to the decision for departure. **Languore et vigiliis** would then refer to the anticipated trials of a prolonged siege. This rendering gives a proper meaning to **quare,** but gives less point to the second half of the sentence. Of these interpretations, 2 (*b*) seems the best. Perhaps, as some think, the passage is out of place, and should be inserted after **perducitur,** above, describing the efforts of Sabinus' party in debate.

11. nec . . . et. See on Bk. iv. ch. i. 21; xxix. 11.

12. maneatur, impersonal.

13. ut quibus, "as if"; lit., "as men to whom" (see on Bk. iv. ch. xxiii. 13).

15. datum, *sc. esse,* dependent on **persuasum esset.** Remember the two constructions of *persuadeo—e.g., persuasum est mihi:* (a) *ut eam,* "to go" (purpose); (b) *me ire,* "that I am going" (ordinary acc. and infin. of indirect statement).

longissimo . . . impedimentis, abl. abs. That in the vicinity of an enemy the march out should be made with a lengthened and therefore weakened line, and with the encumbrance of a large quantity of baggage, shows the credulity and incompetency of Sabinus.

Chapter XXXII.

1. ex nocturno premitu vigiliisque, "from the noise and activity during the night" in the Roman camp.

3. a, "at a distance of" (see on Bk. iv. ch. xxii. 15).

5. ex utraque parte, "at each end."

Chapter XXXIII.

1. qui, causal, "since he."

trepidare . . . concursare . . . disponere, historic infinitives.

2. haec, governed by *facere* understood.

3. ut=*ita ut.*

deficere. We should say, "so that he seemed to be at a total loss." This verb is also used intransitively with a dative in the same sense.

4. in ipso negotio, "in the thick of things."

5. qui, as above.

6. profectionis auctor non fuisset, "had not been in favour of marching."

8. imperatoris, *sc. officia praestabat.*

10. per se omnia obire, "perform all duties by themselves."

quoque, abl. of *quisque.*

11. pronuntiare. This is a common idiom in Latin and Greek. Some subject to **pronuntiare** has to be mentally supplied. English idiom uses the passive, "bade orders to be given." In the next chapter both idioms occur.

12. in orbem consisterent. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxxvii. 5.

14. **cecidit**, "turned out."

18. **quaeque**, "and such things as."

19. **properaret**, like *contendere*, used with a prolative infinitive.

20. **fletu**. These tears were due, not to cowardice, but to the emotional nature of the southern temperament.

complerentur, by asyndeton with **discederent** and **properaret**, depends on **ut**. The **-que** of **quaeque** connects the first two.

Chapter XXXIV.

1. **At barbaris . . . defuit**, "on the other hand, the natives were not lacking in a plan of action."

tota acie, "along the whole line," locative abl. without *in*.

3. **illorum**. They said "*yours* is the booty."

5. **aestimarent**, jussive.

Erant——pares, bracketed in Meusel's text.

virtute et numero, abl. of reference or respect.

6. **a Fortuna**. The preposition shows that Fortune is personified.

11. **levitate——posse**, also bracketed in Meusel's text.

12. **nihil——posse**, "that no harm can come to them." **Noceri** is impersonal.

13. **recipientes** governs **se**, and is governed by **insequantur**.

insequantur, jussive.

Chapter XXXV.

1. **cum**. See on Bk. iv. ch. i. 10; xvii. 11.

3. **nudari necesse erat**, "was necessarily exposed." Whenever a cohort left the circle, the enemy feigned flight in that particular part; but the sides of the gap in the Roman circle were necessarily exposed. When the cohort tried to return, it found itself surrounded by those who had fled and quickly returned and by the enemy on either side nearest to the fugitives. Thus sallies were futile. On the other hand, it was equally hopeless to remain in the circle.

11. **horam octavam**, about 2 P.M.

12. **Balventio**, dat. of reference, where we in English idiom use possessive genitive.

13. **primum pilum duxerat**—*i.e.*, *primipilaris*. The pluperfect implies that he had completed his time of service and was now attached to the legion as an *emeritus*, "veteran."

13. **pilum**, from **pilus** (see Introduction, p. xxiv., note).
15. **eiusdem ordinis**—*i.e.*, a *primipilaris*.
17. **in adversum os**, "full in the mouth."

CHAPTER XXXVI.

5. **posse.** See on ch. xxvi. 13.

quod——pertineat, "that his request would be able to be granted as far as the soldiers' lives were concerned."

6. **ipsi**, Sabinus.

nocitum iri, impersonal. With verbs used impersonally, the periphrasis (*fore ut*) is generally employed instead of the fut. infin. pass.

7. **communicat——excedant**, "communicates with Cotta with a view to quitting the fight, if he (Cotta) think fit." **Ut** final is used loosely, dependent on **communicat**; **si videatur**, like **pugna**, being emphatic, is put outside the **ut** clause. Another way of taking the sentence is, "communicates with him to see if (a common use of **si**) he agrees to quitting." This would make **ut** substantival, and dependent on **videatur**.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

1. **quos . . . tribunos.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xxxi. 5.
11. **aquilifer.** See Introduction, p. xxiv.
13. **occiditur.** *Occido* (*ob-cado*) is generally used as the passive of *occīdo* (*ob-caedo*).

Illi, those who had regained the camp.

15. **Pauci**, not out of the camp, but out of the battle.
16. **ad T. Labienum in hiberna.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 13.

Suetonius tells a story that when Cæsar heard of this disaster—the extinction of one legion and a half—he vowed he would let his hair grow until he had taken vengeance on the Eburones.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

5. **sui . . . liberandi.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 14.
6. **ulciscendi Romanos.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 6.
7. **dimittant**, "let slip."
8. **nihil——interfici**, "it was a matter of no difficulty for the

legion wintering with Cicero to be surprised and massacred." We should expect *trucidari* here instead of **interfici**, which is mostly used only of killing individuals.

9. **negotii**, partit. gen., dependent on **nihil**, our colloquial "nothing of a business."

10. **se . . . adiutorem.** We should say, "his aid."

Chapter XXXIX.

2. **qui omnes**, English idiom, "all of whom." Contrast these two sentences: *nos trecenti sumus parati*, "300 of us are prepared"—*i.e.*, 300 out of 300, the whole body; *trecenti e nobis sunt parati*, "300 of us are prepared"—*i.e.*, 300 out of (say) 500, a fraction of the body.

eorum, the Nervii.

4. **nondum . . . perlata.** We should say, "before the news reached."

6. **qui . . . discessissent.** The relative seems here to be used in its simple sense, without any restrictive or consecutive sense. The subjunctive must be due to attraction, being dependent on **interciperentur.**

Chapter XL.

Notice the vividness of this chapter, produced by short sentences, vivid tenses, asyndeton, &c.

2. **si pertulissent.** There is no expressed apodosis, but it is easily gathered from **praemiis propositis.** The subject of **pertulissent** is *nuntii*, to be supplied. After the historic present **mittuntur**, Cæsar might have written the more vivid *pertulerint*; but the less vivid tense is used probably because the chance of the despatch getting through was small (see on ch. xlvi. 7).

3. **missi**, "those who had been sent."

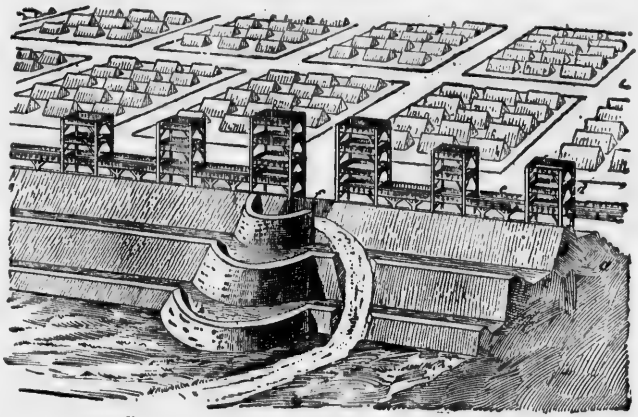
4. **turres.** These were built at regular intervals along the wall, like the modern bastion. They were probably three storeys high, and about ten feet square. Each platform or storey was protected on the side towards the enemy by battlements and breastworks (**pinnae loricaeque**). They were open at the back, and ascended by ladders. From the storeys the troops hurled missiles on the attackers. See illustration on next page.

4. **admodum**, "quite."

cxx. "If we estimate the circumference of the camp of a legion at 4600 feet, then 120 towers would give a distance of about 40 feet from tower to tower" (Moberley).

12. **praeustae sudes**, stakes sharpened at the end, and hardened in the fire, and shot from *tormenta*.

Camp with towers.



a, *vallum*. *b*, *lorica*. *c*, *fossa*. *d*, *turris*. *e*, *pons*. *f*, *porta*.

12. **muralium pilorum**, long heavy javelins used in defence of a *wall*.

13. **contabulantur**, "are built in storeys."

pinnae, battlements or palisading of wood.

loricae, "breastworks" of wicker-work, "fascines."

14. **ex cratibus**, attributive to **loricae** (see on Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 15).

attexuntur, "are attached" to the **turres**.

cum, "though."

tenuissima, "very delicate."

16. **ut**, "to such an extent that."

ultro——cogeretur. We should say, "he was compelled to spare himself by the spontaneous action of the troops, who crowded round him with entreaties (or expostulations)." The adverb **ultro** is used to qualify **concursu**, which is a *verbal* noun.

Chapter XLI.

1. **sermonis aditum,** "access to an interview."
3. **Facta potestate,** "audience being granted."
4. **egerat,** "had treated of."
7. **faciundae,** an old form of the gerundive.
8. **qui . . . diffidant**—*i.e.*, "who themselves are in a precarious condition."
9. **hoc esse . . . animo,** "such was their attitude towards."
11. **inveterascere,** "become established."
per se, "as far as they are concerned."
16. **utantur,** jussive.
17. **pro eius iustitia,** "such was Cæsar's sense of justice."

Chapter XLII.

1. **spe.** The Nervii had hoped to entrap Cicero with the same plausible arguments as had proved successful to Ambiorix in dealing with Sabinus.
4. **nulla . . . copia,** ablative absolute.
5. **quae,** "such as."
gladiis. Notice the order, emphasising "with their *swords*." The natural order, *caespites gladiis circumcidere*, would have meant something different—"they cut *clods* with their swords."
6. **exhaurire,** "to dig out," strictly goes only with **manibus.** With **sagulis,** supply "they carried." This figure is called *zeugma*.
8. **minus horis tribus,** "in the course of less than three hours"; *quam* omitted (see on Bk. iv. ch. x. 3).
milium passuum xv. It is almost impossible to believe that the investing lines were fifteen (Roman, about fourteen English) miles in circumference. Perhaps, with some editors, instead of **passuum** we should read *pedum* (the best MSS. have the initial *p* only), which would be about two and three-quarter miles.

Testudo.

10. **valli,** the Roman rampart.
falces, *murales*, also called *asseres falcati*, hooks shaped like

sickles attached to poles, and used for tearing down fortifications. The besieged would endeavour to frustrate these by catching the heads in loops of rope.

testudines. See on ch. ix. 16. Here, movable sheds to protect the storming parties. See Illustration on p. 131.

CHAPTER XLIII.

1. **ferventes . . . glandes,** red-hot balls of clay, hurled from leathern slings.

2. **fusiles** means that the balls had been moulded when soft.

fervefacta can scarcely mean "red-hot," as they could not have been hurled by hand, and presumably the Gauls had no *tormenta*. Probably they had burning tow attached to them.

casas. Strong wooden huts were used in winter camps.

3. **stramentis . . . tectae,** "thatched" (see on ch. xii. 7).

6. **sicuti,** "just as if," with abl. abs. So with *quasi, tanquam*. This idiom is really elliptic. Here some verb like *clamarent* is mentally supplied.

parta . . . atque explorata victoria, "a complete victory had been obtained" (see on ch. xxvii. 23).

12. **nemo,** emphatic position, "not a single man."

paene ne . . . quidem quisquam, "scarcely a man even."

ac tum. We can bring out the force of these words by saying, "and it was a time when all fought their hardest."

14. **gravissimus,** "most critical."

15. **ut,** "since."

16. **sub,** "close under."

17. **non dabant,** "refused to give."

18. **turri,** the enemies'. The Gauls were adopting all the Roman methods of attack.

21. **vocare,** of course ironically.

22. **deturbati,** *sc. sunt Galli.*

CHAPTER XLIV.

A magnificent piece of narrative.

1. **qui,** with consecutive force. Their bravery was bringing promotion.

9. **inrumpit,** *sc. in eam partem.*

10. **Ne . . . quidem**, gives the force of "nor yet . . . on his part" (Greek, *καὶ αὐτός . . . οὐ*).

vallo, "within the rampart."

13. **quo——protegunt.** See on Bk. iv. ch. xii. 4.

15. **Transfigitur.** In vivid narrative, the verb often is placed first in the sentence: so **Avertit, Succurrit**, below.

16. **Avertit . . . vaginam**, "turns the sheath away from him," thus causing delay in drawing the sword.

17. **conanti.** See on ch. xxxv. 12.

18. **Succurrit——Vorenus.** This is a beautiful example of delicate order. **Succurrit** has been noticed above. **Inimicus** gains force by being placed next to **succurrit**, with which it is contrasted, and by being separated from **Vorenus**, which occupies an emphatic position at the end.

21. **rem gerit**, "fights."

26. **versavit**, "dealt with."

28. **uter utri.** Our idiom is, "which of the two . . . to the other."

Chapter XLV.

in dies, "day by day" (see on Bk. iv. ch. i. 11).

maxime, quod, "chiefly owing to the fact that."

res——pervenerat, "it had come to this, that there was a scarcity of defenders."

8. **fidem praestiterat**, "sworn fidelity."

9. **ad Caesarem**, at Samarobriva (*Amiens*).

10. **inligatas**, "folded in" the shaft.

Chapter XLVI.

3. **milia.** See on Bk. iv. ch. x. 3.

7. **posset**, a variation in sequence, with special force, as Labienus, being amongst the unfriendly Treveri, was not likely to be able to come (see on ch. xl. 2).

8. **veniat**, jussive subjunct., in semi-dependence on **scribit.**

Reliquam partem, the troops under Roscius and Plancus.

10. **ex proximis hibernis**, presumably those of Crassus at *Montdidier*. In that case the cavalry, travelling rapidly, preceded Crassus and the legion.

Chapter XLVII.

2. **progreditur**. Cæsar, with Trebonius' legion, sets out immediately; the advance-guard of Crassus' army arrives at Samarobriva without waiting for the actual arrival of Crassus, whom he leaves in command.

3. **praeficit**. Cæsar had already departed, but left word that Crassus was to take the command.

4. **litteras publicas**, "public records" comprising the rolls of the legions, information collected from spies, accounts, &c.

6. **non ita multum**, like our colloquial "not so much," means practically "not at all."

8. **ad eum**, "against him."

9. **ne . . . non**. Cæsar might have written *ut*.

11. **praesertim quos . . . sciret**, "especially as he knew that they."

12. **quanto**, "(to say) with what."

13. **educturus esset** represents in the direct *educerem*, not *educam* (fut.) He did not mean to set out.

rem gestam in Eburonibus, the disaster to Sabinus and Cotta.

Chapter XLVIII.

1. **etsi——reciderat**, "although he was disappointed in his expectation of three legions, and reduced to two;" **opinione**, lit., "*from* his expectation."

2. **duas**, his own and Fabius'.

7. **Graecis litteris**, "Greek language," rather than merely Greek characters, with which the Gauls, if we may judge from the Helvetii (Bk. i. ch. xxix.), were acquainted. According to Polyænus, the words were *θαρρεῖν, βοήθειαν προσδέχου*, "be of good cheer; expect aid." Cæsar frequently used a simple cryptogram, substituting for a letter that which was fourth from it in the alphabet.

10. **amentum** was a leathern strap which was attached to the centre of the spear, and considerably increased the distance to which it could be thrown by imparting a rotatory movement to the missile.

13. **periculum**, of being mistaken by the Romans for an unfriendly Gaul.

14. **biduo**. We should expect the acc. of duration, but Cæsar not

unfrequently uses the abl. when the period is so short as to make little difference between point of time and duration.

16. **perlectam**—*i.e.*, he read it through to himself first: notice that *epistolam* has to be supplied.

in conventu militum, "on parade."

17. **fumi**; the plural implies "smoke in different places," but we have no English equivalent.

19. **adventus**, "about the arrival."

expulit, "dispelled."

Chapter XLIX.

1. **relinquunt**, "raise."

2. **Haec**, attracted (for *hi*) to agreement with the predicate (see on Bk. i. ch. i. 1).

armata. The Gauls came *omnibus copiis*, including camp-followers, &c.

6. **faciat**, jussive, in semi-dependence on **admonet**.

8. **Caesar**. The position of the name inside the abl. abs. is for the purpose of obviating the insertion of *ad eum*, showing to whom the despatch was brought.

9. **animo**, abl. of respect, "in mind." English idiom would probably omit it altogether, being less definite than Latin (see on Bk. i. ch. i. 5).

10. **trans**, not with **progressus**, but with **conspicatur**, as Cæsar did not cross the valley and river till later (see below).

12. **tum**, "at the same time."

13. **aequo animo**, "with a clear conscience."

16. **milium septem**. There were two legions, which thus contained 3500 men each, a number below normal (see Introduction, p. xxii).

17. **angustiis viarum**, "by narrowing the passages (or streets) of the camp." See plan, p. 81.

19. **hostibus**. See on ch. xxxv. 12.

speculatoribus, abl. of means or instrument.

Chapter L.

2. **Galli . . . Caesar**, in apposition to **utrique**.

3. **si forte . . . posset**, subordinate to the **ut** clause, and parallel with **si id efficere non posset**, not "to see if."

Chapter LI.

1. **invitati**, "tempted."

8. **in speciem**, "merely for show." In order to increase the enemy's opinion of their state of terror, the Romans blocked up the gates with turf, so as to give the impression that no sortie was contemplated, yet with turf only one row thick, so that when the time came, the sortie could be easily made.

quod explains what follows, not what precedes: "because they (the Gauls) seemed (to themselves) unable to force an entry by that way"—*i.e.*, through the gates.

12. **sic uti**, "to such good purpose that."

13. **occidit**, *occīdo*.

exuit—*i.e.*, compelled them all to throw them away.

Chapter LII.

2. **neque——videbat**, "and because he saw that no chance was left of inflicting even a small damage on them." He had only 400 cavalry. These words are bracketed in Meusel's edition.

neque etiam=*et ne . . . quidem.*

5. **producta**, "paraded."

non decimum quemque, "not one in ten."

12. **certius**. Labienus' letter had given him some information.

13. **rem**, the disaster to Sabinus and Cotta.

proponit, "describes."

quod——sit acceptum, "that the disaster, which has been received owing to the culpable rashness of a general." The subjunct. is subobliique; so **relinquatur** below.

14. **hoc**, either acc. antecedent to **quod detrimentum**, or abl. of measure with **aequiore**, "all the more patiently," anticipating **quod** causal which follows.

Chapter LIII.

1. **per Remos**, "through the territory of." It might also mean "by means of." The Remi and the Haedui were the faithful friends of the Romans.

2. **cum**, concessive.

5. **quo . . . fieret**, consecutive.

5. **significatio,** "intimation."

6. **fieret,** "was conveyed."

10. **tribus.** Cæsar must have been joined by Plancus, because otherwise, after sending away Fabius, he would have only Trebonius' and Crassus' legions, and Roscius did not move from his camp (see below).

trinis, without any distributive force. Nouns that are used in the plural with singular meaning use the distributive numerals instead of the cardinals. The reason is that most of these nouns have a different meaning in the singular, and there is need of some means of distinguishing, for instance, between "two letters" (of the alphabet), *duae litterae,* and "two epistles," *binae epistolae*; "two forts," *duo castra,* "two camps," *bina castra.*

12. **ad exercitum,** "*at* the camp" or "with the army."

15. **reliqui** is nominative; **consilii,** partitive genitive.

caperent . . . fieret, dubitative or deliberative subjunctive.

17. **Neque ullum fere,** "scarcely any."

18. **sine sollicitudine.** This is further defined by the **quin** clause, both going closely with **intercessit.** Trans., "elapsed without anxiety on Cæsar's part, *and* without his receiving."

Caesaris, subjective genitive.

22. **sui,** Roscius.

24. **afuisse,** "had been," but were no longer.

Chapter LIV.

2. **cum . . . denuntiaret,** "solemnly declaring."

6. **adventu in Galliam.** The prepositional phrase is attributive (see on Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 15). This use is common with verbal substantives.

11. **senatum,** assembly of chiefs, called by Cæsar by the Roman name.

audientes, "obedient."

12. **esse.** This clause is in sense the subject of **valuit.** It might equally well have been expressed by *quod* with the indicative.

17. **Gallici belli officiis,** "services in the Gallic War."

18. **Id . . . mirandumne sit,** lit., "I do not know whether this is so much to be wondered at"—*i.e.,* "perhaps this is not," &c.

cum . . . tum maxime, quod, "for many other reasons, but specially because." *Cum . . . tum* = "both . . . and."

20. **opinionis,** partitive gen. with **tantum**; "prestige."

Chapter LV.

2. **quin . . . mitterent,** "without sending."

5. **persuaderi potuit,** "was able to be persuaded." Remember the two meanings of a past tense of *possum* with the infin.: *e.g.*, *potui ire*, (1) "I was able to go (and went)"; (2) "I was able to go (and did not)"—*i.e.*, "I could have gone."

7. **Ariovisti bello,** in the first campaign, or 58 B.C.

Tencterorum transitu. In Bk. iv. 1.

8. **Hac spe lapsus,** "disappointed"; so ch. xlviii. 1, *opinione deiectus.*

Chapter LVI.

1. **ultro,** "spontaneously."

veniri. Notice how frequently Cæsar uses the impersonal construction when the stress is laid on the action and not on those who perform it.

Senones. Ch. liv. 4. They had expelled Cavarinus.

6. **coguntur,** general, not particular.

13. **huc . . . per fines Remorum.** The route from the Treveri to the Senones naturally lay through the Remi.

Chapter LVII.

3. **quam,** indefinite.

8. **sub,** "close to."

alias, . . . alias, adverb.

11. **Labienus** pursued the same tactics of feigned fear as Cæsar had.

Chapter LVIII.

11. **praecipit atque interdicit.** The command is expressed by **petant** (semi-dependent jussive subjunct.), the prohibition by **neu vulneret.** This command recalls that of Hazael, King of Syria, who commanded his captains to fight "neither with small nor great, save only with the King of Israel."

13. **petant . . . vulneret,** expressive change from secondary to vivid sequence.

neu quis quem, both indefinite.

15. **mora reliquorum,** "delay over the rest"—*i.e.*, caused by Romans pursuing the rest.

APPENDIX.

I. INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

A.

Ambiŏrix, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., lii. Chief of the Eburones, who, with Catuvolcus, raised a revolt against the Romans, and destroyed the fifteen cohorts under T. Sabinus and Cotta—after treacherously inducing them by a show of friendship to quit the camp—and nearly succeeded in capturing the camp of Cicero, who was relieved, after a heroic resistance, by Cæsar. He was never captured.

Ambivarīti, Bk. iv. ch. ix. A tribe in Belgium on the Mosa (*Meuse*). (Map I., *Af.*)

Ancalītes, Bk. v. ch. xxi. A tribe in Britain, probably in *Berkshire*, south of *Windsor*. (Map II., Ba.)

Arduenna Silva, Bk. v. ch. iii. The modern *Ardennes*, a forest in south of Belgium. (Map I., Af.

Ărēmŏricae Civitates, Bk. v. ch. liii. States in north of *Brittany* and *Normandy*; said to be derived from Celtic *are* = "on," and *mori*, *muir* = "sea" (= *ad-mare*). (Map I., Bb.)

Ariovistus, Bk. iv. ch. xvi.; Bk. v. chs. xxix., lv. A German chief who, at the invitation of the Sequani, crossed the *Rhine* to aid them against the Haedui. However, after conquering the Haedui, he appropriated territory of his allies the Sequani, who thereupon became reconciled with the Haedui and begged help of Cæsar. The Romans defeated him in a big battle (58 B.C.), but he escaped, and was subsequently killed, though the manner of his death is not recorded.

Arpineius, Caius, Bk. v. chs. xxvii., xxviii. Sent as envoy with Q. Junius to negotiate with Ambiorix.

Atrebătes, Bk. iv. ch. xxi.; Bk. v. ch. xlvi. A Belgic tribe south of Portus Itius (*Boulogne*). See **Commius**. (Map I., Ad.)

Atrius, Quintus, Bk. v. chs. ix., x. Put in command of the fleet by Cæsar in the second invasion.

Atuatŭci, Bk. v. chs. xxvii., xxxviii., xxxix., lvi. A powerful Belgic tribe, roused to revolt by Ambiorix. Chief town, *Tongres*. (Map I., Af.)

B.

Balventius, Titus, Bk. v. ch. xxxv. A brave veteran, *primipilaris*, killed with the troops of Sabinus and Cotta.

Batăvi, Bk. iv. ch. x. A Celtic people who inhabited the *insula* formed by the Rhine, Vacalus (*Waal*), and Mosa (*Meuse*). (Map I., Af.)

Belgae, Belgium, Bk. iv. ch. xxxviii.; Bk. v. chs. xiii., xxv. One of the three great divisions of Gaul. The Belgae were of German origin: they occupied the NE. of Gaul. The chief Belgic tribes were the Nervii, Bellovaci, Remi, Morini, Menapii, Suessiones, Atuatuci, Atrebates, Eburones.

Bellovăci, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xlvi. A Belgic tribe, SW. of Belgium. Three winter-camps were placed by Cæsar amongst them in 54 B.C. —*i.e.*, those of M. Crassus, Munatius Plancus, C. Trebonius. (Map I., Be.)

Bibrŏci, Bk. v. ch. xxi. A tribe perhaps on south coast of Britain (*Surrey* and *Sussex*). Other authorities place them in *Hertfordshire*. Together with the Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, and Cassi, submitted to Cæsar during second invasion. (Map I., Ac; Map II., Ba or Aa.)

Britanni, Britannia, Bk. iv. chs. xx.-xxiii., xxviii.-xxxviii.; Bk. v. chs. ii.-xxii. See Introduction, p. xl.

C.

Caesar, Caius Iulius. See Introduction, p. xiv.

Cantium, Bk. v. chs. xiii., xiv., xxii. Modern *Kent*. Described as the most civilised portion of Britain. It was divided into four small principalities under Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, whom Cassivellaunus persuaded to make an unsuccessful attack on Cæsar's naval camp during the second invasion. (Map I., Ad.)

Carnŭtes, Bk. v. chs. xxv., xxix., lvi. A Gallic tribe on the Liger (*Loire*); capital Cenabum. Cæsar set Tasgetius on the throne whom they rose against and killed. They also intrigued with Indutiomarus. (Map I., Bd.)

Carvilius, Bk. v. ch. xxii. See **Cantium.**

Cassi, Bk. v. ch. xxi. A British tribe north of the *Thames*, in *Middlesex* and *Hertfordshire*. Their name is said to survive in the modern *Cassiobury*, near *Watford*. See on **Bibroci**. (Map I., Ac; Map II., Aa.)

Cassivellaunus, Bk. v. chs. xi., xviii., xxii. A powerful prince of the Cassi, holding sway over a large district north of the *Thames*. He tried to obstruct Cæsar's passage of the *Thames* without success; thereupon he adopted harassing tactics, until his "town" (*St Albans*) was taken by storm, when he submitted. The name is a **Latinised** form of Cadwallon or Caswallon.

Catuvolcus, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xxvi. With Ambiorix, was chieftain of the Eburones, but does not appear to have taken so energetic a part in the rising against Sabinus and Cotta. See **Ambiorix.**

Cavarinus, Bk. v. ch. liv. Set up by Cæsar as king of the Senones, but driven out by them.

Cenimagni, Bk. v. ch. xxi. A British tribe (probably of Gallic origin), placed by some in *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, and identified with the Iceni, Boadicea's tribe; and by others in *Bedfordshire* and *Cambridgeshire*. See **Bibroci**. (Map I., Ad.)

Ceutrŏnes, Bk. v. ch. xxxix. A small Belgic tribe in the NE. of Belgium, who, together with other small tribes of the district—the Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoxii, Geidumni—were under the sway of Ambiorix, and persuaded by him to attack Cicero's camp. (Map I., Af.)

Cicero, Quintus, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xxxix.-lii. Brother of the great orator, Marcus Tullius Cicero; born about 102 B.C., and brought up with his brother. From 61-59 B.C. he was prætor of Asia. In 58 B.C. he went to Gaul as *legatus* to Cæsar, and in 54 showed great courage and military skill in defending his winter camp against the attack of the Nervii. Subsequently he sided with Pompey in the Civil War against Cæsar, but was pardoned by his old chief after the battle of Pharsalia (48 B.C.) He was proscribed by the Second Triumvirate, and put to death in 43 B.C.

Cingetŏrix, (1) Bk. v. chs. iii., lvii. Son-in-law of Indutiomarus, chief of the Treveri, and his rival for the chief[illegible]. He remained loyal to Cæsar, by whom he was made chief of the tribe. (2) Bk. v. ch. xxii. See **Cantium.**

Claudius, [illegible] Bk. v. ch. i. Consul in 54 B.C. with L. Domitius.

Commius, Bk. iv. chs. xxi., xxvii., xxxv.; Bk. v. ch. [illegible]. Set up by Cæsar as king of the Atrebates, and, owing to his influence in Britain, where there was another branch of the tribe, sent further by him with the British envoys on the eve of the first invasion. He was (possibly at his own connivance; see on Bk. iv. ch. xxvii.)

thrown into prison by the Britons, and not released till the end of the second invasion. Subsequently he abused Cæsar's confidence in him by rendering active assistance to the Gauls in the revolt of 52 B.C.

Condrûsi, Bk. iv. ch. vi. A Belgic tribe between the Mosa (*Meuse*) and the *Rhine*. (Map I., Af.)

Cotta, Lucius Aurunculeius, Bk. iv. chs. xxii., xxxviii.; Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xxvi.-xxxvii. A *legatus* of Cæsar, associated with Sabinus (1) in command of an expedition against the Menapii and Morini on the eve of the first invasion of Britain, and (2) in command of the winter-quarters at *Tongres* among the Eburones. The Eburones under Ambiorix revolted, and, in spite of Cotta's strenuous resistance, Sabinus' advice was followed, and the fifteen cohorts made an attempt to quit camp, which resulted in their being caught by Ambiorix in an ambush and cut to pieces. Cotta, after doing all that was possible to retrieve the position, and showing great energy—in marked contrast to the incompetence of Sabinus—died fighting. Sabinus also fell.

Crassus, (1) **Marcus** (Bk. iv. ch. i.), with Cæsar and Pompey, made up the unconstitutional coalition of 60 B.C. known as the First Triumvirate. He was consul in 55 B.C. with Pompey. He was killed at the battle of Carrhæ, 53 B.C., whilst conducting the war against the Parthians.

(2) **Marcus**, son of the above. He went to Gaul with Cæsar as quaestor. In 55 B.C. Cæsar put him in command of one legion in winter-quarters at *Montdidier*, amongst the Bellovaci, and on quitting Samarobriva (*Amiens*) to relieve Cicero, summoned him to that town and left him in command there. Subsequently Crassus remained loyal to Cæsar in the Civil War, and held the command of Cisalpine Gaul.

D.

Domitius, Lucius, Bk. v. ch. i. Consul with Ap. Claudius in 54 B.C.

Dumnorix, Bk. v. chs. vi., vii. A chief of the Haedui. He had conspired unsuccessfully against the Romans, with a view to obtaining the kingdom, in 58 B.C. Owing to the entreaties of his brother Divitiacus, Cæsar pardoned him; but in 54 B.C. distrusted him too much to leave him behind in Gaul at the time of the second invasion of Britain. Dumnorix refused to accompany Cæsar to Britain, and tried to foster revolution. He was captured and killed. The disloyalty of Dumnorix does not imply the disaffection of the Haedui as a whole.

Durus, Quintus Laberius, Bk. v. ch. xv. A military tribune, who was killed in Britain during the second invasion.

E.

Eburōnes, Bk. iv. ch. vi.; Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xxviii., xxix., xxxix., lviii. A Belgic tribe, dependants (*clientes*) of the Treveri. Under Ambiorix they destroyed the fifteen cohorts of the winter camp under Sabinus and Cotta (54 B.C.) Subsequently (in 53 B.C.) they were annihilated by Cæsar (Bk. vi. chs. xxxiv., xxxv., xliii.), but Ambiorix escaped. (Map I., Af.)

Essuvii, Bk. v. ch. xxiv. A tribe in Normandy. L. Roscius was quartered amongst them at *Séez* in a winter camp in 54 B.C. (Map I., Bc.)

F.

Fabius, Caius, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xlvi., xlvii., liii. One of Cæsar's *legati*. He was put in command of the legion in winter camp at *St Pol* amongst the Morini. He joined Cæsar on his way to relieve Cicero.

G.

Geidumni, Bk. v. ch. xxxix. A Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii. See **Ceutrones**. (Map I., Af.)

Germani. The chief German tribes mentioned in these two books are—

1. Suebi, Bk. iv. chs. i., iii., iv., vii., xvi., xix., where their manners and customs are described. The name is a generic one for a large confederation of tribes occupying a large tract of territory east of the *Rhine*, and is sometimes used almost as a synonym for Germans. It remains in the modern *Suabia*. (Map I., Ah.) As their name is believed to imply, they lived a nomadic life. The more settled peoples were called Ingævones, to whom belonged the Usipetes and Tencteri. Tacitus uses the term Suebi to denote all the inhabitants of northern Germany. He describes them as distinguishable from other Germans by their top-knot of hair, which they wore to increase their height and the terror of their appearance. It was owing to pressure from the Suebi that the Usipetes and Tencteri crossed the Rhine.

2. Ubii, Bk. iv. chs. iii., viii., xi., xvi., xix. A friendly tribe on the east bank of the *Rhine*, their chief town being the modern *Cologne*. They had been made tributary by the Suebi. To render them assistance was one of the reasons that induced Cæsar to cross the Rhine. (Map I., Ag.)

3. **Sugambri**, Bk. iv. chs. xvi., xviii. On the east bank of the *Rhine*, north of the Ubii. They harboured the flying cavalry of the Usipetes and Tencteri after their defeat, and refused to surrender them. It was partly to punish them that Cæsar crossed the Rhine. He left a strong garrison among them. (Map I., Ag.)

4. **Usipētes** and **Tenctēri**, Bk. iv. chs. i., iv., xi.-xvi., xviii. Tribes on the east bank of the *Rhine*, north of the Sugambri. Forced by the Suebi to cross the river, they invaded Gaul and occupied territory belonging to the Menapii, but were defeated and nearly destroyed by Cæsar. (Map I., Ag.)

Grudii, Bk. v. ch. xxxix. A Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii. See **Ceutrones**. (Map I., Af.)

H.

Haedui, Bk. v. chs. vi., vii., liv. A powerful tribe in the centre of Gaul, who with the Remi remained loyal to Cæsar during the general uprising of 54 B.C. In 58 B.C., at the appeal of Divitiacus, Cæsar had assisted them against Ariovistus and his invading German hordes. Subsequently, in 52 B.C., they wavered in their allegiance, and joined the revolt of Vercingetorix, but were mercifully treated by Cæsar. See also **Dumnorix**. Their capital was Bibracte (*Autun*). (Map I., Cf.)

Helvetii, Bk. iv. ch. x. A Celtic tribe who inhabited modern Switzerland. In 58 B.C., under Orgetorix, they migrated into Gaul, but were defeated and driven back by Cæsar. (Map I., Cg.)

Hispania, Bk. v. chs. i., xiii. Spain, represented by Cæsar as being west of Britain. From Spain Cæsar obtained esparto grass for the rigging of ships, and cavalry.

I.

Illyricum, Bk. v. ch. i. A province extending along the east coast of the Adriatic. Together with Gallia Cisalpina, it formed the *provincia* assigned to Cæsar by the Lex Vatinia (59 B.C.) At the beginning of 54 B.C. Cæsar went there to check a rising of a small tribe called the Pirustæ, who, on his approach, immediately submitted, denying the responsibility of the whole tribe for the incursion.

Indutiomārus, Bk. v. chs. iii., iv., xxvi., liii., lv. A chief of the Treveri, who, in 54 B.C., was contesting the chieftainship with his son-in-law, Cingetorix, who was loyal to Rome, and who consequently was supported by Cæsar. He raised a conspiracy in the winter of 54 B.C., and attacked the winter-camp of Labienus, who defeated and killed him.

Iunius, Quintus, Bk. v. chs. xxvii., xxviii. See **Arpineius**.

L.

Labienus, Titus Atius, Bk. iv. ch. xxxviii. ; Bk. v. chs. viii., xi., xxiii., xxiv., xxvii., xxxvii., xlvi., xlvii., liii., lvii. Cæsar's most trusted *legatus*. In 55 B.C. he was intrusted with the command of an expedition against the Morini, and with the charge of Gaul during Cæsar's absence on the second invasion. He was put in command of the winter camp amongst the Remi at *Laracherie*, and successfully resisted Indutiomarus' attack. Subsequently, on the outbreak of the Civil War, he deserted Cæsar and fought for Pompey against him at Pharsalia, Thapsus, and Munda, where he fell (45 B.C.)

Lepontii, Bk. iv. ch. x. An Alpine tribe. Cæsar states that the *Rhine* rose in their territory. (Map I., Ch.)

Levăci, Bk. v. ch. xxxix. A Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii. See on **Ceutrones.** (Map I., Af.)

Lingŏnes, Bk. iv. ch. x. A tribe in centre of Gaul. The name survives in *Langres*. (Map I., Bf.)

Lucanius, Quintus, Bk. v. ch. xxxv. A Roman centurion (*primipilaris*) who fell whilst rescuing his son, fighting under Sabinus and Cotta.

Lugotŏrix, Bk. v. ch. xxii. A Kentish leader who fell in the attack on the naval camp.

M.

Mandubracius, Bk. v. ch. xx., xxii. A young prince, son of a king of the Trinovantes, who, on his father being put to death by Cassivellaunus, had fled to Cæsar in Gaul. At the request of the Trinovantes, Cæsar restores him, and compels Cassivellaunus to abstain from injuring him.

Mediomatrices or **-i**, Bk. iv. ch. x. A Gallic tribe in the district of *Metz*. (Map I., Eg.)

Meldi or **Meldae**, Bk. v. ch. v. A Gallic tribe on the Matrona (*Marne*), near *Paris*. Here Cæsar had ships built. (Map I., Be.)

Menapii, Bk. iv. chs. iv., xxii. A Belgic tribe on the Mosa (*Meuse*), driven out of their homes by the Usipetes and Tencteri. (Map I., Af.)

Mona. Bk. v. ch. xiii. The ancient name both of the *Isle of Anglesea* and the *Isle of Man*. Cæsar probably refers to the latter.

Morini, Bk. iv. chs. xxi., xxii., xxxvii., xxxviii. ; Bk. v. ch. xxiv. A Belgic tribe on the coast. Their capital was Portus Itius or Gesoriacum (*Boulogne*). On Cæsar's return from the first invasion they attacked his troops, whereupon Labienus led a punitive expedition against them. (Map I., Ae.)

Mosa, Bk. iv. chs. ix.-xii., xv., xvi.; Bk. v. ch. xxiv. The *Meuse* or *Maas*. It rises among the Lingones, and, flowing through Silva Arduenna (*Ardennes*), joins the Vacalus (*Waal*), and with the *Rhine* forms the Insula Batavorum. See note on Bk. iv. ch. xv. (Map I., Af.)

N.

Nantuātes, Bk. iv. ch. x. A Gallic tribe on the upper reaches of the *Rhine*. (Map I., Cg.)

Nervii, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xxxviii., xxxix., xli., xlii., xlvi., lvi., lviii. A powerful Belgic tribe, holding the tribes round in dependence. Urged on by Ambiorix, they attacked Cicero in his winter camp. See **Cicero**. (Map I., Ae.)

O.

Oceanus, Bk. iv. chs. i., xxix. The *North Sea*.

P.

Padus, Bk. v. ch. xxiv. The river *Po*, in Cisalpine Gaul. (Map I., Di.)

Petrosidius, Lucius, Bk. v. ch. xxxvii. A brave standard-bearer who died fighting in the disaster of Sabinus's camp.

Pirustae, Bk. v. ch. i. See **Illyricum**.

Piso, Bk. iv. ch. xii. An Aquitanian prince in Cæsar's army. He died in a fight with the Usipetes and Tencteri, whilst going to his brother's rescue.

Plancus, Lucius Munatius, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xxv. A *legatus* and close friend of Cæsar, who was placed by him in charge of one of the three legions wintering among the Bellovaci. His camp was probably at *Champlieu*. On the murder of Tasgetius by the Carnutes, Cæsar transferred him to winter-quarters there. Subsequently he served under Cæsar in the Civil War, and after Cæsar's murder went as governor of Gaul, according to an arrangement made by Cæsar before his death. At this time he founded the colony of Lugdunum (*Lyons*). In 42 B.C. he was consul (Horace, *Odes*, iii. 14, 28). In the political struggles of the time he "trimmed" between Antony and Octavian, but finally threw in his lot with the latter, who on his proposal received the title of Augustus (27 B.C.).

Pleumoxii, Bk. v. ch. xxxviii. A Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii. See **Ceutrones**. (Map I., Af.)

Pompeius, Cnaeus, (1) Bk. iv. ch. i. Consul with Crassus in 55 B.C.; the great Roman statesman and general. (See Introduction, pp. xv-xix.)

(2) Bk. v. ch. xxxvi. The interpreter whom Sabinus sent to negotiate with Ambiorix.

Portus Itius, Bk. v. chs. ii., v. (see note on Bk. iv. ch. xxi.) It was probably *Boulogne*, also called Gesoriacum, and subsequently Bononia. (Map I., Ad.)

Pullo (or **Pulio**), **Titus,** Bk. v. ch. xliv. A centurion (*primipilaris*), whose rivalry in valour with Lucius Vorenus, another centurion of the same rank, led to deeds of great heroism on the part of both during the siege of Cicero's camp by the Nervii.

R.

Remi, Bk. v. chs. iii., xxiv., liii., liv. A powerful tribe in the south of Belgium; like the Haedui, loyal to Cæsar. The name survives in *Rheims*. (Map I., Bf.)

Roscius, Lucius, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., liii. One of Cæsar's *legati*, who was placed in command of the winter camp at *Sées* amongst the Essuvii.

Rufus, Publius Sulpicius, Bk. iv. ch. xxii. A *legatus* of Cæsar, left in charge of Portus Itius on his first invasion of Britain.

S.

Sabinus, Quintus Titurius, Bk. iv. chs. xxii., xxxviii.; Bk. v. chs. xxiv.-xxxvii. See **Cotta.**

Samarobrīva, Bk. v. chs. xxiv., xlvii., liii. A town in the west of Belgium, now *Amiens*, on the Samara (*Somme*). *Briva* = "bridge." Headquarters of Cæsar and the *legatus* Trebonius in the winter of 54 B.C. (Map I., Be.)

Segontiăci, Bk. v. ch. xxi. A tribe in South Britain, probably *Hampshire*. (Map I., Ab.)

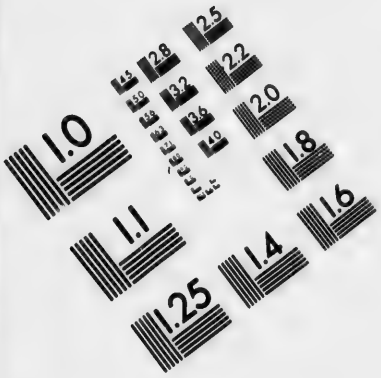
Segŏvax, Bk. v. ch. xxii. See **Cantium.**

Senŏnes, Bk. v. chs. liv., lvi. A powerful Gallic tribe on the *Seine*, SE. of Lutetia Parisiorum (*Paris*). In 54 B.C. they attempted to kill **Cavarinus** (*q.v.*), and joined the conspiracy of Indutiomarus. (Map I., Be.)

Sequăni, Bk. iv. ch. x. A Gallic tribe, capital Vesontio (*Besançon*), south of Vosegus Mons (*Vosges*). (Map I., Cg.)

Suebi, Bk. iv. chs. i., iii., iv., vii., xvi., xix. See **Germani.**

Sugambri, Bk. iv. chs. xvi., xviii. See **Germani.**



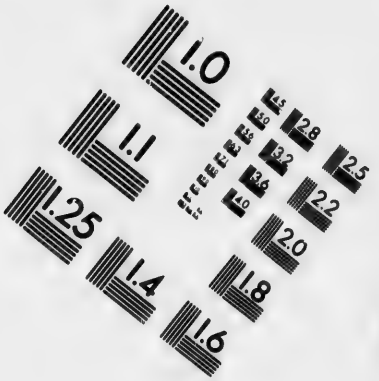
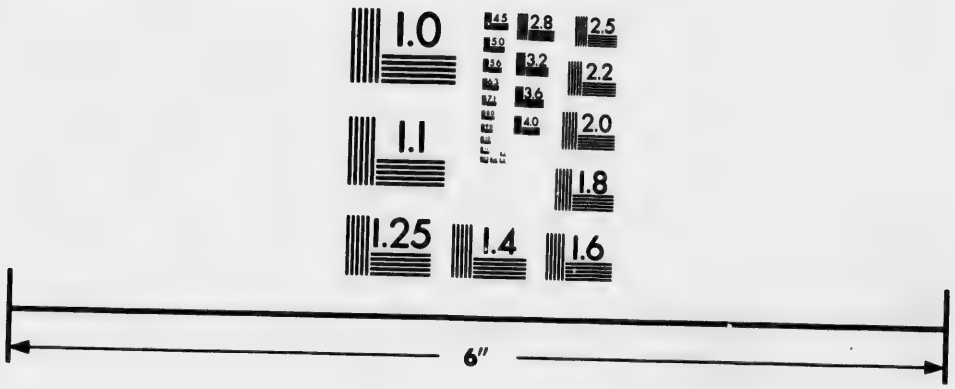
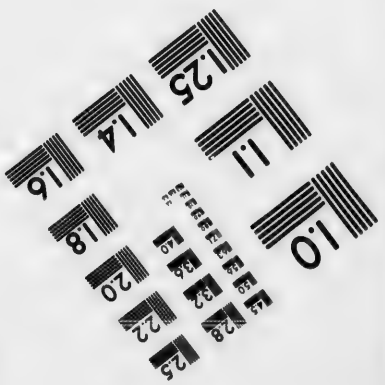


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)





Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

2.8
2.5
2.2
2.0
1.8
1.6
1.1
1.0

T.

Tamĕsis, Bk. v. ch. xviii. The River *Thames,* crossed by Cæsar, probably at *Sunbury.*

Tasgetius, Bk. v. chs. xxv., xxix. See **Carnutes.**

Taximagulus, Bk. v. ch. xxii. See **Cantium.**

Tencteri, Bk. iv. chs. i., iv., xi., xv., xvi., xviii.; Bk. v. ch. lv. See **Germani.**

Trebonius, Caius, Bk. v. chs. xvii., xxiv. A *legatus* of Cæsar. He was surprised by the Britons in the invasion of 54 B.C., when in charge of three legions and the cavalry on a foraging expedition. He commanded the legion in winter-quarters at Samarobriva (*Amiens*).

Trevĕri, Bk. iv. ch. x.; Bk. v. chs. ii.-iv., xxiv., liii. A Gallic tribe on the banks of the Mosella (*Moselle*); the name survives in *Trier* or *Treves.* See **Cingetorix, Indutiomarus.** (Map I., Bg.)

Tribŏci or **-es,** Bk. iv. ch. x. A German tribe on the west bank of the *Rhine,* near *Strasburg.* (Map I., Bg.)

Trinovantes, Bk. v. chs. xx., xxii. A powerful British tribe in East Anglia, chief town Camulodūnum (*Colchester*). Their submission to Cæsar caused Cassivellaunus' rising to collapse. (Map I., Ad; Map II., Ab.)

U.

Ubii, Bk. iv. chs. iii., viii., xi., xvi., xix. See **Germani.**

Usipetes, Bk. iv. chs. i., iv., xi., xv., xvi., xviii. See **Germani.**

V.

Vacălus, Bk. iv. ch. x. The river *Waal,* which flows from the Rhine into the Mosa (*Meuse*). (Map I., Af.)

Vertĭco, Bk. v. chs. xlv., xlix. A Nervian who took refuge in Cicero's camp and assisted him in communicating with Cæsar.

Volusenus, Caius, Bk. iv. chs. xxi., xxiii. Sent by Cæsar with a man-of-war to gather information about Britain, on the eve of the first invasion.

Vorenus, Lucius, Bk. v. ch. xliv. See **Pullo.**

Vosĕgus, Mons, Bk. iv. ch. x. A range in east of Gaul, the modern *Vosges.* (Map I., Bg.)

II. SCHEME OF SUBJUNCTIVE.

The subjunctive in Latin may be classified under two main heads, with subdivisions: (I.) its use in **Principal clauses** chiefly, forming a sentence by itself; (II.) its use in **Subordinate clauses**, with relatives and relative adverbs.

These may be subdivided—

I.

(*a*) **Potential**: *veniam*, "I would come"; *venirem*, "I would be coming"; *venissem*, "I would have come."

(*b*) **Jussive**: *veniam* (*veniat*), "let me (him) come"; *venias*, "come"; *ne veneris*, "do not come." This subj. may be used in semi-dependence: *mando eas*, "I bid you go."

(*c*) **Optative**: with *utinam*, *veniam* (*venirem*, *venissem*), "would that I may come (were now coming, had come)."

(*d*) **Deliberative** or **Dubitative**: *veniam* (*venirem*)? "am I (was I) to come?"

II.

(*a*) **Final**, end or purpose—

(1) *ut*, *qui*, *quo* (with comparatives).

(2) *antequam*, *priusquam*, *dum*, *quoad*, "until," when any idea of purpose is implied: *e.g.*, *manebis dum scias*, "you will stay till you know." Also with *quominus*, *quin*, *ne* after verbs of preventing (when negative or interrogative): *e.g.*, *non te prohibebo quominus venias*, "I will not prevent you from coming."

(*b*) **Indirect command** (oblique petition): *rogo ut venias*, "I ask you to come."

(*c*) **Consecutive**, result—

(1) *ut*, *qui*: *e.g.*, *non sum is qui veniam*, "I am not the man to come."

(2) *quin* after verbs of doubting (negatived): *non dubito quin faciat*, "I have no doubt he will do it."

(*d*) With *qui* **Restrictive** (Generic), limiting the relative and involving the idea of class or character: *sunt qui dicant*, "there are some who (such as) say"; *omnium quos cognoverim*, "of all whom (such as) I know."

(*e*) **Concessive**: $\left\{\begin{matrix} cum \\ quamvis \\ qui \end{matrix}\right\}$ *sciret*, "although he knew."

(*f*) **Causal**: $\left\{\begin{matrix} cum \\ qui \end{matrix}\right\}$ *sciret*, "since he knew." See also (*g*) 2.

(*g*) **Suboblique**—

(1) Merely a kind of label marking the verbs of relative and relative adverb clauses dependent on an indirect statement or question: *e.g.*, *dixit se quoniam ille veliet, venturum*, "he said that he, since he wished, would come." This is the subj. of subordinate clauses in *or. obl.*

(2) Virtually oblique, with *quod*, *quia*, showing that the cause is the alleged, and not necessarily the real, one. A boy writing "lines" might say, *haec scribo quod ignavus fuerim*, "I am writing these because, *as he said*, I was idle." If he admitted he was idle, he would use the indicative.

(*h*) **Indirect Question**: *rogo quis adsit*, "I ask who is there."

(*i*) **Conditional**: in the protasis of some hypothetical clauses, *si oboediam* (*oboedirem*, *oboedissem*), "if I were to listen (were now listening, had listened)." The apodosis to these would be the potential subjunctive (see I. (*a*)).

(*k*) **Iterative** or **Indefinite**: *ubi venirem*, "whenever I came." This subj. is not used in Cicero, is rare in Cæsar, but frequent in Livy and later writers.

III. LIST OF PHRASES AND IDIOMS OCCURRING IN THESE BOOKS,

Intended for learning by heart or as material for exercises.

I. MILITARY.

Under arms, *in armis.*
The science and practice of war, *ratio atque usus belli.*
Dismount, *ex equis, ad pedes, desilire.*
Fight on foot, *pedibus proeliari.*
Retreat, *se recipere, pedem referre, cedere;* an unimpeded retreat, *expeditus receptus.*
Place garrisons, *praesidia disponere.*
Fight, *vi, armis contendere, proeliari, pugnare, dimicare.*
A three days' march, *tridui iter.*
Surprise, *inopinantes hostes opprimere.*
Obtain supplies, *rem frumentariam comparare.*

Make war, *bellum inferre, bello civitatem persequi bellum parare.*
Military occupation, *armis possidere.*

Conquer, *superare, vincere.*
Advance (on march), *progredi, castra movere.*
Precede the main body, *agmen antecedere.*
Get water, corn, forage, firewood, materials for fortification, *aquandi, aquationis, frumentandi, pabulandi, lignationis, munitionis causa.*
Armistice, seek an, *diem indutiis petere.*
Charge, *impetum facere, se hostibus offerre.*
Rout, *perturbare, fundere ac fugare, in fugam conicere, praecipites agere.*
Unhorse, *deicere.*
Put in command of, *praeficere* (dat.); be in command, *praeesse.*
Raids, *incursiones.*
Levy troops on a state, *civitati milites imperare.*
Winter-quarters, *hiberna* (neut. plur.)

Light infantry, *legiones expeditae.*
Make preparations for war, *ad bellum res comparare.*
To protect, *praesidio* (dat.) *esse.*
Stop the advance of, *prohibere.*
A strong position, *locus et natura et opera munitus.*
Civil war, *bellum domesticum.*
In three divisions, *tripertito.*
The supreme command, *summa imperii bellique administrandi.*
Hot engagement with, *proelio acriter cum . . . confligere.*
Lose (men), *amittere.*
On guard, *in statione.*
Send relief, *subsidio* (dat.) *mittere, cohortes submittere.*

Halt, *consistere.*
Loose formation, *rari magnisque intervallis.*
Recover, *se colligere.*
Auxiliary troops, *auxilia.*
Draw up troops, *copias instruere.*
Sustain the charge, *impetum sustinere, ferre.*
Disband, *dimittere.*
Cut off, *intercludere.*
Receive wounds, *vulnera accipere.*
Quit the field, *proelio, acie, excedere.*
Spur on a horse, *equum incitare.*
Give battle, *proelium, committere, facere.*

A triple formation, *aciem triplicem instituere.*
Pursue, *consectari, consequi.*
In the rear, *post tergum.*
Throw away arms, *arma abicere.*
Fire, *tela conicere.*
Artillery, *fundi, sagittae, tormenta, catapultae, ballistae.*
Stubbornly contested battle, *pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter.*
Keep the ranks, *ordines servare.*
Follow the flag, *signa subsequi.*
Open flank, *latus apertum, nudatum.*
Wavering ranks, *incerti ordines.*
Squadrons, *turmae.*

Collect a large force of infantry and cavalry, *multitudinem peditatus, equitatusque cogere.*
Fly, *fugere, terga vertere, se fugae mandare.*
Surrender arms, *arma ponere, disponere.*
Surrender, *se dedere.*
Storm, *oppugnare.*
Take in flight, *in fuga comprehendere.*
Attack (camp), *adoriri,* (army) *impetum facere in . . . ,* (person) *petere,* (town) *oppugnare.*
Make a sally, *eruptionem facere.*
Treat of surrender, *de deditione mittere, agere.*
Enrol, *conscribere.*
A rising, *tumultus;* revolt, *defectio.*
In great force, *magna manu.*

Inflict wounds, *vulnera inferre.*
Post an ambush, *insidias conlocare.*
Column, *agmen.*
Form a hollow square, *in orbem consistere.*
Receive fire on an exposed flank, *ab latere aperto tela recipere.*
Raise a cry of victory, *victoriam conclamare, ululatum tollere.*
Battlements and breastworks, *pinnae loricaeque.*
Iron tools, *ferramenta.*
Bullets, *glandes.*
Flushed with victory, *victoria recenti elati.*
Intercept a despatch, *epistolam, litteras intercipere.*
Send out scouts, *exploratores dimittere.*

II. NAVAL.

Seize ships, *naves occupare.*
Man-of-war, *navis longa.*
Form a fleet, *classem efficere, naves parare, naves aedificare, naves instruere.*
Guard the harbour, *portum tenere.*
Transports, *naves onerariae, rectoriae.*
Weatherbound, *vento teneri.*
Weigh anchor, (*ancoram*) *solvere*, (*ancoram*) *subferre.*
Embark, *naves conscendere.*
Reach shore, *attingere.*
Disembark (trans.) *exponere*, (intrans.) (*navibus*) *egredi.*
At anchor, *in ancoris.*
Row, *remis incitare, remis agere.*

On dry land, *in arido.*
Keep a course, *cursum tenere.*
Light wind, *lenis ventus.*
Cast anchor, *ancoram iacere.*
Put out to sea, *in altum provehi.*
Beach, *subducere.*
Launch, *deducere.*
Tackle, *armamenta.*
Wreck, *adigere.*
Repair ships, *naves reficere.*
Make seaworthy, *efficere ut navigari commode possit.*
Make (*i.e.*, reach) the port, island, *portum, insulam capere.*

Changes of tides, *aestuum commutationes.*
Rowing vessels, *naves actuariae.*
Equip (ships), *armare* (tackle, *armamenta*).
Crossing, *traiectus.*
Obtain fair weather, *idoneam tempestatem nancisci.*
Wind dropping, *vento intermisso.*
Leave on the left, *sub sinistra relinquere.*
Equal the speed of men-of-war, *longarum navium cursum adaequare.*
Sandy or pebbly beach, *litus molle.*
Held at anchor, *ad ancoram deligatae.*
Storm arose, *coorta est tempestas.*
Cast on the shore, *in litore iectae.*
Prevented from sailing, *a navigatione exclusi.*

INDEX (ENGLISH).

The references are to chapters in the Notes.

ablative—
absolute, Bk. iv. chs. i. 21, x. 9, xii. 4, xiii. 13, xviii. 7, xxii. 10, xxviii. 10.
description, Bk. iv. ch. i. 19; Bk. v. ch. iv. 14.
instrument or means, Bk. iv. chs. i. 15, ii. 7, x. 10, xxxii. 18.
measure, Bk. iv. ch. xxx. 5; Bk. v. ch. xiii. 6.
respect, Bk. v. chs. v. 6, xlix. 9.
separation, Bk. iv. chs. i. 6, xxx. 7.
accompaniment (without *cum*), Bk. iv. ch. xxiv. 3.
accuracy of Latin, Bk. iv. chs. i. 4, vi. 5, xii. 11, xvii. 14, xviii. 10, xxiii. 10, xxvi. 7, xxxiv. 13.
accusative—
adverbial, Bk. iv. chs. i. 15, iii. 8.
cognate, Bk. v. ch. vii. 4.
duration. See Time.
adjective as predicate, Bk. iv. ch. iii. 13.
adverb as adjective, Bk. v. chs. iii. 15, xl. 16.
aorist, Bk. iv. ca. iv. 2; Bk. v. ch. xv. 3.
apodosis omitted, Bk. v. ch. xl. 2.
assizes, Bk. v. ch. i. 13.
asyndeton, Bk. iv. chs. xii. 16, xvi. 16, xxxii. 3; Bk. v. chs. xx. 5, xxvii. 23.
attraction, Bk. iv. chs. i. 22, xxviii. 1, xxxviii. 4; Bk. v chs. ii. 5, xlix. 2.
brachylogy, Bk. iv. ch. xxii. 9.
bridge, Bk. iv. ch. xvii.
Britain—
early inhabitants of, Bk. v. ch. xii. 1.
shape of, Bk. v. ch. xiii. 4.
British tribes of same name as Gallic, Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 16; Bk. v. ch. xii. 3.

Caesar. See Intro. xiv-xxi.
alleged harshness, Bk. iv. chs. xiv. 13, xv. 12; Bk. v. ch. vii. 1.
belief in fortune, Bk. iv. ch. xxvi. 15; Bk. v. ch. xxiii. 9.
estimate of his achievements, Bk iv. ch. xxxviii. 13.
love of adventure, Bk. iv. ch. xx. 14.
Celtic words, Bk. iv. ch. ii. 3.
chariot, British, Bk. iv. ch. xxiv.; Bk. v. ch. xvi.
charioteers, Bk. iv. ch. xxxiii.
conditional clauses, Bk. v. ch. xxix. 7.
council, Bk. v. chs. ii. 14, xxiv. 1, xxviii. 6.
Coway Stakes, Bk. v. ch. xviii. 2.
currents, Bk. v. ch. i. 8.

dative—
agent, Bk. iv. ch. xxiv. 6.
reference, Bk. v. ch. xxxv. 12.
verbs governing, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 2.
days, length of, Bk. v. ch. xiii. 13.

engines, Bk. iv. ch. xxv. 5.

Gauls, character of, Bk. iv. ch. v. 4.
genitive—
definition, Bk. iv. chs. xi. 9, xii. 2, xiii. 10, xiv. 5.
description, Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 27; Bk. v. chs. vi. 8, viii. 19, xi. 8.
objective, Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 19.
partition, Bk. iv. chs. i. 13, xiii. 6, xxxii. 8.
possession as predicate, Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 5.
with adjective, Bk. v. ch. vi. 11.
gerund and gerundive, Bk. iv. chs. xi. 6, xiii. 14, xxii. 20, xxix. 4.
gold in Britain, Bk. v. ch. xii. 8.
Greek letters, Bk. v. ch. xlviii. 7.

hendiadys, Bk. v. ch. xix. 13.

Iberians, Bk. v. ch. xii. 1.
idiom, English and Latin, Bk. iv. chs. vi. 5, x. 8, xi. 7, xii. 1, xiii. 13, xv. 8, xx. 6, xxiv. 2, xxvii. 4, xxviii. 28, xxxi. 2, xxxii. 16; Bk. v. chs. ix. 5, xxiv. 20, xxxix. 2, xliv. 28.
infinitive—
pres. for fut., Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 10; Bk. v. ch. xxvi. 13.
protative, Bk. iv. chs. iv. 11, xvi. 24; Bk. v. ch. xxxiii. 19.
Ireland, Bk. v. ch. xiii. 6.
iterative tenses, Bk. iv. chs. i. 9, xvii. 11, xxvi. 4, 10, xxxiii. 3.

Kent, civilisation of, Bk. v. ch. xiv. 1.

Latin, accuracy of. See Accuracy.
legion, number of, Bk. v. ch. xlix. 16. See also Intro. xxii.
legionaries as engineers, Bk. v. ch. xi. 5.
locative, Bk. iv. ch. xxi. 16; Bk. v. chs. iv. 10, vi. 11.

middle use of passive, Bk. iv. chs. xvii. 5, xxxii. 10.
mile, Roman, Bk. v. ch. ii. 10.

order, emphatic, Bk. iv. chs. i. 20, ii. 6, v. 2, vii. 10, xi. 6, xxiv. 13, xxv. 12, xxxi. 9; Bk. v. chs. xvii. 13, xlii. 5, xliv. 18.

participle, past as present, Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 12; Bk. v. chs. vii. 17, ix. 5.
people, name of, for place, Bk. iv. ch. x. 1.
pleonasm, Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 11; Bk. v. ch. x. 1.
prepositional phrase, Bk. iv. chs. xvi. 15, xxi. 5; Bk. v. chs. v. 8, xl. 14, liv. 6.
pronoun, reflexive, Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 11.

quaestor, Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 9. See also Intro. xxiii.
questions in Or. Obl., Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 15; Bk. v. chs. xxviii. 15, xxix. 12.

relative, connective, Bk. iv. chs. iv. 4, xiii. 16, xiv. 7.
repetition, Bk. iv. chs. vii. 1, xix. 13, xxxii. 6; Bk. v. ch. vi. 3.

sequence, Bk. iv. chs. i. 22, viii. 3, xi. 16; Bk. v. chs. i. 4, xxvii. 10, xl. 1, xlvi. 7.
Spain, position of, Bk. v. ch. xiii. 5.
speeches, Bk. iv. ch. viii. 1.
subjunctive (only a few instances of each given)—
attracted, Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 21.
indirect question, Bk. iv. chs. v. 5, xx. 12.
jussive, Bk. iv. ch. xi. 14; (semi-dependent), Bk. iv. chs. xvi. 12, xxi. 17.
qui causal, Bk. iv. chs. xiii. 2, xxi. 20; Bk. v. chs. iv. 11, xxxiii. 1.
consecutive, Bk. iv. ch. xxxiv. 9.
concessive, Bk. v. ch. iv. 13.
final, Bk. iv. chs. xvi. 11, xxi. 10.
generic (restrictive), Bk. iv. chs. xvi. 11, xix. 8, xxi. 17.
suboblique, Bk. iv. chs. viii. 7, xi. 5.
sunt qui, Bk. v. ch. x. 11.
virtually oblique (alleged cause),

Bk. iv. chs. ii. 2, xiii. 14, xvi. 19, xxvii. 10; Bk. v. ch. vi. 12 (irregular).
with "until," Bk. iv. chs. iv. 17, xii. 11, xiii. 4.
supine in *-um*, Bk. iv. ch. xxxii. 1.
" in *-u*, Bk. iv. ch. xxx. 6.

tides, Bk. iv. ch. xxix. 2; Bk. v. ch. viii. 6.
time—
duration, Bk. iv. chs. i. 5, iv. 2.
"when," Bk. iv. ch. 1. 1.
"within which," Bk. iv. chs. iv. 2, xviii. 1; Bk. v. ch. xxvi. 1.
Roman reckoning, Bk. iv. chs. xxiii. 2, 4, xxviii. 1.
town, British, Bk. v. ch. xxi. 6.
trees, British, Bk. v. ch. xii. 13.

verbal substantive, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 13.
verbs, two, expressing one idea, Bk. v. ch. xxvii. 23.

wives, community of, Bk. v. ch. xiv. 8.

zeugma, Bk. v. ch. xlii. 6.

INDEX (LATIN).

The references are to the Notes.

accedit, Bk. iv. ch. xvi. 6; Bk. v. ch. xvi. 10.
alterae (dat. fem.), Bk. v. ch. xxvii. 19.
amicus populi Romani, Bk. iv. ch. xii. 14.
annotinus, Bk. v. ch. viii. 18.
atque (**ac**), Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 14.

capere, Bk. iv. chs. xxvi. 14, xxxvi. 8.
captus, Bk. iv. ch. iii. 6.
causa, Bk. iv. ch. i. 4.
coepi, Bk. iv. chs. xiv. 13, xviii. 1.
concilium, Bk. v. chs. ii. 14, xxiv. 1.
conventus, Bk. v. ch. i. 13.
Corus, Bk. v. ch. vii. 6.
custodiae, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 11.

dissimulare, Bk. iv. ch. vi. 9.

equitatus, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 13.

fibulae, Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 17.
fusilis, Bk. v. ch. xliii. 1.

hora, Bk. iv. ch. xxiii. 4.

ignoscere, Bk. iv. ch. xxvii. 10.
in (distributive), Bk. iv. ch. i. 11.

lepus, Bk. v. ch. xii. 13.
litem aestimare, Bk. v. ch. i. 24.
litterae publicae, Bk. v. ch. xlvii. 4.

modo, Bk. iv. chs. xvi. 19, xvii. 11.
monere orare, Bk. v. ch. xxvii. 23.

murales pili, Bk. v. ch. xl. 12.
" **fulces**, Bk. v. ch. xlii. 10.

necesse, Bk. iv. ch. v. 10.
neque (**nec**), Bk. iv. chs. i. 21, x. 3, xxix. 11.
noster, Bk. iv. chs. xii. 8, xxii. 3.

occupationes, Bk. iv. chs. xvi. 19, xxii. 9.
oppidum, Bk. v. ch. xxi. 6.
orbis, Bk. iv. ch. xxxvii. 5.

portum capere, Bk. iv. ch. xxxvi. 8.
portum tenere, Bk. iv. ch. xxii. 22.
possidere, Bk. iv. ch. vii. 11.
post diem quartum quam, Bk. iv. ch. xxviii. 1.
primi ordines, Bk. v. ch. xxx. 2. See Intro. xxiv.
primum pilum ducere, Bk. v. ch. xxxv. See Intro. xxvi.
prohibeo, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 9.
properare, Bk. v. ch. xxxiii. 19.

quam omitted, Bk. iv. chs. x. 3, xi. 1, xii. 2.
quin, Bk. iv. ch. vii. 5.
quisquam, Bk. iv. ch. ii. 2.
quisque, Bk. v. ch. viii. 19.
quivis, Bk. iv. ch. ii. 11.
quotannis, Bk. iv. ch. i. 9.

rebellio, Bk. iv. ch. xxx. 6.

res, Bk. iv. chs. i. 16, xxx. 7.
reverti, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 12.

si quis, Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 16.
sic uti, Bk. v. ch. xvii. 6.
simulare, Bk. iv. ch. iv. 11.
subductio, Bk. v. ch. i. 6.
sublicae, Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 23.

testudo, Bk. v. chs. ix. 16, xlii. 10.
tormenta, Bk. iv. ch. xxv. 5.
turres, Bk. v. ch. xl. 4.

ut, Bk. iv. ch. v. 4.

vigiliae, Bk. iv. ch. xxiii. 2.

v. chs. ix. 16, xlii. 10.
. iv. ch. xxv. 5.
ch. xl. 4.

v. 4.

v. ch. xxiii. 2.

IMITATIVE EXERCISES ON CÆSAR.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTERS I TO XXV.

CHAP. I.

(1) In the following year a vast throng of Germans crossed the Rhine, and began to harass the tribes of Gaul. (2) These tribes are all very warlike, and are said to make yearly foreign expeditions. (3) Some go out to fight, the rest remain at home to cultivate the fields. (4) [1]They are lawless and undisciplined, but of great size and [2]strength. (5) Although they [3]practice agriculture, their custom is to live chiefly on milk and meat. (6) They are so strong that they leave much of their body unclothed, and even in the coldest winter go bathing in the Rhine.

[1] Say "although they are," and omit "but." [2] Say "strength of body." Latin loves to be exact. [3] Utor.

CHAP. II.

(1) They do not use imported horses, but even in war those of their own country. (2) By daily practice, the Gauls train their horses to remain absolutely still. (3) Among the Germans, to import wine is considered disgraceful, and they do not allow the merchants to sell it. (4) Leaping from his horse, of which he was very fond, Caesar [1]began to fight on foot. (5) A few Germans attacked our baggage-animals, but did not venture to remain [2]when they saw our cavalry. (6) So lazy was he

that he sold all his [3]spoil to procure better trappings for his horse.

[1] Use the imperfect tense of the verb "to fight." [2] Ablative absolute. [3] Use a relative clause: Latin is weak in nouns, but strong in verbs.

CHAP. III.

(1) The Ubii are the most cultured of these tribes, and the most accustomed to [1]receiving merchants. (2) Their long struggle with the Suebi has made this tribe much weaker. (3) [2]Although the Suebi could not make them tributary, they drove them out of part of their territory. (4) A great number of states dwell as far as possible from the Rhine, [3]to avoid the coming of Gallic merchants. (5) On one side of this river the fields lie waste; the Ubii are said to dwell on the other. (6) They think it the height of glory that all the territory of this people, [4]once so flourishing, now lies deserted. (7) The Gauls, though the more civilized, are not a match for the Germans in war.

[1] Use the gerundive in agreement with "merchants." [2] Quum + subjunctive. [3] Ut + subjunctive to express purpose. [4] Olim.

CHAPS. I TO III.

The Germans are men of immense size and great bodily strength. Yet in war they do not fight as infantry, but employ horses. These they do not import from France, although they border upon the Rhine, but use entirely those produced in their own country. [1]Indeed, though the coming of merchants is allowed, it is contrary to the wishes of many, who think that [2]the more frequently merchants come to any people, the more they become effeminate. [3]Wine is imported and many things which [4]tend to make men lazy and wicked.

Their diet is largely composed of fish, especially of [5]such animals as they take while hunting. In this exercise they

have trained their horses so well that they will remain without stirring, whenever it is necessary.

[1] Atque. [2] Say "by how much the more frequently —— by so much the more they become, etc." [3] Put this sentence in Oratio Obliqua, as it expresses the opinion not of the writer, but of the Germans. [4] Tend to make = efficio. Use subjunctive. [5] Such = is, as = qui.

CHAP. IV.

(1) For three years the horde which we have already mentioned as dwelling [1]on the far side of the Rhine, proved a match for their enemies. (2) [2]They were finally expelled by the Suebi, and wandered for many years in all parts of Germany. (3) [3]Coming to the Rhine, [4]they surprised and slew the garrisons which the Menapii had set, but were not able to seize their ships. (4) [5]Unable to cross, they made a feigned retreat to their own villages. (5) Then their cavalry [6]made a three days march in a single night, [6]captured the scouts of the enemy, and crushed all on both sides of the river. (6) The Menapii were so terrified by [7]this [8]disaster, that they abandoned all their villages.

[1] Trans + accusative. [2] Use the perf. passive participle, and omit the following "and." [3] Quum + pluperf., subjunctive. [4] Ablative absolute: "The surprised garrisons having been slain." [5] Quum + imperf. subjunctive. [6] Ablative absolute. [7] Use relative. [8] Clades (is), fem.

CHAPS. II TO IV.

Through lack of ships our men were unable, [1]either by force [1]or by stealth, to effect a landing. They would have returned from the banks of the river to those villages where the baggage-animals had remained, [2]had not Caesar been informed by a scout that a number of merchants, who had secretly been importing wine into the country, were willing to sell the ships which they had been using. On the arrival of [3]these [4]he crossed the river, and sent the cavalry to drive out all the tribes which [5]had not returned

to their own territories. [4]This they did in a few days, and informed Caesar that the whole bank had been deserted.

[1] Neque — neque. [2] Nisi. [3] Relative. [4] Ablative absolute. [5] Subjunctive.

CHAP. V.

(1) Caesar was informed that the Gauls had repented of the designs on which [1]they had entered. (2) He compelled the merchants to declare, much against their will, what they had heard concerning this matter. (3) He [2]feared the fickleness of the Gauls, and had decided that nothing must be entrusted to them. (4) It is the custom of this people to ask all travellers their [3]views on any subject. (5) They are, therefore, the prey of vague rumours, which are often concocted with a view to suiting their wishes. (6) The common people are so changeable in their opinions that they are in a state of perpetual desire for a revolution.

[1] Subjunctive. [2] Participle of "vereor," and omit the following "and." [3] Relative clause "what they think."

CHAPS. III TO V.

Caesar was informed that the custom of the Suebi was to drive from their boundaries all tribes who approached them. [1]On one side the land lay waste for one hundred miles; the Ubii, [2]their neighbours on the other, [3]once a large and prosperous state, had been wandering through Germany for many years, [4]while those [2]beyond the Ubii were in like case. Thus a great number of warlike tribes were wandering along the banks of the Rhine; they could not, if they wished, return to their own domains; so great a multitude could not support itself on the small resources which they had seized from the Gauls; they were therefore in the greatest want.

[1] Put what follows in Oratio Obliqua. [2] Use a relative clause. [3] Olim. [4] Et.

CHAP. VI.

(1) [1]After waging a formidable war against several German states, Caesar set out earlier than usual toward the Rhine. (2) [1]He confirmed the [2]hopes of the Germans, [3]ordered them to supply cavalry, and [1]when this had been accomplished, sent an embassy to the Treveri. (3) When this [4]had arrived, it found that Caesar's suspicions were correct, [5]and that the Germans had been induced to extend their wanderings over a wider area. (4) Caesar therefore thought that he must prepare cavalry, and ordered the Treveri to furnish it. (5) On the arrival of their chiefs, the Treveri resolved not to perform his [6]demands. (6) Summoning their clients, they resolved to wage war upon those states which had abandoned the Rhine.

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] Singular. [3] Ablative absolute; "Cavalry having been ordered from them." [4] Subjunctive. [5] Omit "and that," and use Oratio Obliqua. [6] Relative clause.

CHAP. VII.

(1) With a chosen band of cavalry he marched for four days against the Germans. (2) Ambassadors came from them, [1]saying that they had prepared supplies of corn, and would not hesitate to oppose him. (3) It was their custom, [2]they said, to be first in attack, and not to yield to the very gods themselves. (4) If [3]you wish our gratitude, [2]said they, either give us the lands of our ancestors, or allow us to conquer those on which we are waging war. (5) If you [4]provoke us, we will not be your friends. (6) We came against our will, we have gained this territory by our valour; drive us out, if you can.

[1] Qui + imperfect subjunctive. [2] Put this verb first, and the rest of the sentence in Oratio Obliqua. [3] Being in Oratio Obliqua, this will become third person. [4] Future perfect indicative.

Chaps. IV to VII.

The Gauls are a fickle people, who often enter upon a course of action moved by vague reports. Knowing that this was their habit, Caesar compelled those chiefs whose villages he had seized to tell him [1]their intentions. Finding that his suspicions were correct, and that the Germans had been invited [2]to crush his guards and then to cross the river, he judged it best to set out to the army. Having arrived there, he concealed his knowledge and ordered the soldiers to prepare corn. When this had been done he made a secret marçh, and fell upon the unsuspecting enemy. Before that part of them which he had attacked could make any resistance, he killed them all. The rest of this great body returned home, [3]saying that they yielded to the Romans and to them alone.

1 Use a relative clause. 2 "His guards having been crushed." 3 "His verbis."

Chap. VIII.

(1) Ambassadors came [1]to complain of the injuries [2]which the Suebi had inflicted. (2) The conclusion of his speech was that they [3]might remain in Gaul if they protected their territories. (3) There are no fields lying waste for those who [4]cannot protect their own. (4) You may, if you wish, settle in the territory which has asked aid of us. (5) The numbers of the Suebi are so great that there can be no peace between us and them. (6) If your chiefs had laid these commands upon them, they would not have settled among the Ubii.

1 Qui + subjunctive. 2 Simply the objective genitive "Sueborum." 3 Licere. 4 Subjunctive.

Chaps. V to VIII.

Knowing that the Gauls, and especially the common people, are always desirous of a revolution, Caesar replied to their embassy: [1]Go back to those who sent you, and tell them that there is not a single man upon this earth whom I cannot conquer. Keep the land of your ancestors, if you will; if you settle in the territory of the clients of the Roman people, there can be no peace between us and you. To [2]this the Gauls replied: [1]We were expelled from our homes, and came to you seeking aid; land lies waste which we can protect; we can be useful friends to you; but if you harass us unprovoked, we will not yield: we do not wish to beg for mercy; earlier than you suspect, a great multitude is coming to aid us.

[1] In Latin this speech would almost certainly be put in Oratio Obliqua.
[2] Relative plural.

Chap. IX.

(1) The ambassadors said that they were awaiting a large part of their cavalry. (2) [1]These, they said, had been sent across the Meuse, [2]to prevent the enemy from plundering their camp. (3) The ambassadors thought that [1]they intended to return after two days. (4) But Caesar [3]discovered that they were [4]really sent to announce his coming. (5) After discussing everything, they asked Caesar not to send his men any nearer to the camp to plunder. (6) If we cannot gain even this request, we must interpose delay.

[1] Relative. [2] Say simply "lest their enemies might plunder."
[3] Cognoverat. [4] Re vera.

CHAP. VII TO IX.

Ambassadors came from the Germans and the Gauls, though they knew that there could be no [1]real friendship between Caesar and themselves. [2]The former said that they would drive out all who attacked them, but that, while they would not yield even to the Romans, they would allow them to retain possession of all the territory across the Meuse which they were now holding. In reply Caesar asked them to return in four days time. The Gauls, [3]whose object was to protect their country against all [4]invaders, [5]sought to make Caesar their ally against the Germans by complaining bitterly of the injuries which these had done them, and by [6]making long speeches about the friendship between their ancestors and the Roman people.

[1] Verus. [2] Illi. [3] "Who wished." [4] Omit "invaders." [5] "Complained many things in order that they might obtain aid from Caesar." [6] Multa loquor = I make a long speech.

CHAP. IX AND X.

(1) [1]Rising in the mountains called the Alps, this river flows swiftly through many states. (2) It flows into the ocean by many large mouths, which are called [2]by various names. (3) These form many islands, the inhabitants of all of which are barbarians. (4) Their sole food is said to consist of fish and eggs, which they plunder from the birds. (5) These tribes, who are considered the most savage of all Gaul, sent many ambassadors to Caesar, [3]asking him to remain at a great distance from their island. (6) [4]Caesar, who had ascertained their barbarism and savagery, granted their request.

[1] Say "this river rises and flows." Latin suffers greatly from the lack of a present participle. [2] Varie. [3] Qui + imperfect subjunctive. [4] "Which thing they obtained from Caesar."

Chap. XI.

(1) Meeting the ambassadors in the way, Caesar [1]forbade them to come any nearer. (2) They earnestly implored him not to advance any nearer on that or on the next day. (3) [2]Unable to obtain this request, they asked him to send word to the cavalry to return to the main body. (4) These they said, [3]were harassing them, and preventing them from obtaining water. (5) [4]I will give you, replied Caesar, three days to ask the Ubii what are their demands. (6) Return, said he, in as large numbers as possible, in order to tell me the terms which they [5]propose.

[1] Say "commanded them not." Imperavit ne + subjunctive. [2] "Which when they were not able to obtain." [3] Oratio Obliqua. [4] "To whom Caesar replied that he, etc. [5] Volo.

Chaps. VIII to XI.

The [1]inhabitants of all the countries through which the Rhine flows sent ambassadors earnestly imploring Caesar not to advance into their territories. Even the inhabitants of the islands at the mouth of the Rhine [2]asked his permission to send their chiefs to him. Caesar, especially as he was awaiting his cavalry, which had not returned from a plundering expedition among the Treveri, pledged himself to this. [3]Nevertheless, he did not ask but commanded them to accept the terms which he proposed, and to send a large part of their cavalry to aid him. Though he knew that there could be no true friendship between himself and these barbarians, he did not wish to provoke them, lest he might not be able to keep them away from the territory [4]lying between the rivers.

[1] Relative clause. [2] Asked that they might send. [3] Minime tamen petivit. [4] Say "which is."

CHAP. XII.

(1) As soon as their cavalry had returned, they made a fierce attack and put to flight our unsuspecting soldiers. (2) It is the custom of this nation in battle to leap to the ground, and stab the horses from beneath. (3) In this battle [1]they killed many, [1]wounded more, and put the rest to flight. (4) All our men of highest birth, though they resisted bravely, were killed [2]in the attempt to aid their friends. (5) Two brothers, who had been given by our senate the title of friends of the Roman people, were cut off by the enemy and fell covered with wounds. (6) We therefore made a truce, and departed, in order that the terrified cavalry might not again be routed.

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] Say "while they are aiding."

CHAPS. XI AND XII.

When at a distance from the enemy of not more than four miles, Caesar heard from those who had gone on ahead to forage, that the cavalry of the enemy, to the number of five thousand, had, [1]in defiance of the truce, crossed the Meuse, charged, and driven our men into flight. This was a legion which he had sent among the Ubii, and which, having completed all its [2]business, was now returning without fear of any attack. On hearing this, Caesar sent word to the Germans that [3]since they had again [4]wantonly attacked the forces of the Roman people, he would at once [5]begin [6]to carry out the plan upon which they had so earnestly requested him not [6]to enter. Let them not request him to hold back his soldiers from the battle; they had slain men whom the Roman people had called friends, whom it had already aided. It was his

custom not to cease from fighting [7]until he had either put to flight or slain all who would not [8]abide by their oaths.

[1] Contra. [2] res (in plural). [3] Quum + pluperfect subjunctive. [4] I wantonly attack = lacesso. [5] Express "would begin to carry out" by the Future Infinitive of the verb. [6] Utor. [7] Priusquam. [8] Jurejurando teneor = I abide by an oath.

CHAP. XIII.

(1) After taking counsel with his lieutenants, Caesar felt that the affair had fallen out very fortunately. (2) It would be the height of folly to wait till the return of the forces with which the enemy [1]intend to join battle. (3) The enemy have already terrified the Gauls in one battle; we must give them no time for increasing their influence among them. (4) In the morning, therefore, he led out all his forces, [2]feeling that not a day must elapse. (5) He kept in the camp the ambassadors, who with German cr ft, had come [3]to make a lying justification. (6) The cavalry were ordered to bring up the rear, since he knew the Gallic fickleness and feared treachery.

[1] Intend to join = future participle. [2] Quum + subjunctive. [3] Me fallendo purgo = I make a lying justification.

CHAPS. XII AND XIII.

Caesar felt that he must bring help to people who had been called friends by the Roman senate, and of whom many had fallen in the recent battle, fighting with the greatest bravery. Covered with wounds their chiefs had still urged their steeds against the foe, and been killed, cut off from all who [1]might have borne them aid. He therefore ordered our men to rejoice that their friends had fallen after so brave a resistance, and that now they knew how great craft and treachery the Germans [2]were capable of using. "They are," said he, "advancing in great crowds. Do not fear their numbers. To-morrow morning

we give battle. They asked for peace and then of their own accord attacked us. Fight bravely and do not cease from the battle until these men who have employed treachery against us, fall before the eyes of the Gauls whom they have deceived."

[1] Qui potuissent, etc. [2] Uterentur, subjunctive in an indirect question.

CHAP. XIV.

(1) Will it be better to take up arms and join battle, or to flee to the Rhine with our wives and children? (2) The Germans drew up their army in line of battle and endeavoured to defend the camp against our men. (3) After defending the camp for a little while, they fell into such confusion that no plan could be formed. (4) Our men, roused by the battle, rushed into the camp with a great din, [1]before Caesar could perceive what was going on. (5) [2]So quick was our rush that the Germans in great fear [3]began to flee in their waggons. (6) Their wives and children, who had left home with them, began to [4]flee for safety in all directions.

[1] Priusquam. [2] Say, "our men rushed with such speed." [3] Imperfect Subjunctive. [4] "Began to seek (imperfect) safety in flight."

CHAP. XV.

(1) Hearing the shouts of the Gauls, the Germans threw down their arms in such fear that [1]not even one remained to harass our troops. (2) At the junction of the two rivers, with every man wounded, and overwhelmed by the weapons of our soldiers, they rushed into the stream. (3) Our men [2]went on slaying them till Caesar granted their lives to the very few who were left. (4) Our men returned to the camp, [3]overcome with great weariness, since in one day they had slain 430,000 of the enemy without losing a man. (5) Those of the enemy who had

fallen in the camp were thrown, [4]some into the Meuse, [4]some into the Rhine. (6) He allowed the soldiers to leave in the river those who had been drowned, of whom the number was very great.

[1] Ne unus quidem. [2] Imperfect. [3] Say, "with great weariness of body." [4] Alii.

CHAPS. XIII to XV.

It was announced to Caesar that the Germans had [1]not only been plundering the lands of the Gauls, [1]but also terrifying them with many tortures. Thinking that the time for granting conditions of peace was already past, and that an agressive war must be waged, Caesar did not await [2]the return of his cavalry, but set out with the troops which he had with him. The Germans, with their wives and children, were rejoicing over the truce which they had obtained after the recent battle, and had no thought of our swift and sudden coming. No time was given them to take up arms; in the very place where they had hurled the Gauls into the Rhine they were themselves overwhelmed. After a brief resistance they fled in all directions, followed by our cavalry, which [3]came up in the nick of time.

[1] Non modo . . . . sed etiam. [2] Say "till the cavalry had returned." [3] Revertor.

CHAP. XVI.

(1) Caesar resolved to demand from the Sugambri those fugitives who had crossed the Rhine, and who [1]refused to surrender. (2) He did not think that he could have a juster cause for crossing this river [2]than the determination to drive away those who had, [3]unprovoked, made war on him. (3) Another cause was his desire to give aid to the Ubii, and confidence for the future. (4) His defeat of the

Germans [3]in this latest battle had carried the Roman name to their furthest borders. (5) The Germans, who had been coming across the Rhine, now feared for their own territory. (6) He thought that if he dared to cross the river, the prestige of the Roman name would aid the Ubii, [4]even without a battle.

[1] Nolo. [2] "than that he might drive away." [3] Ultro. [4] Nullo proelio facto.

CHAPS. XIV TO XVI.

The Ubii promised to send an ample supply of ships with which [1]to cross the Rhine. Caesar deliberated whether he dared lead his army among tribes so remote, [2]especially as he knew that the Ubii were themselves hard pressed by their enemies, who might crush those whom he left behind, capture the ships, and prevent his return. But the prestige of the Roman people was so great, now that he had defeated those who had attacked Gaul, that he determined to cross. There was added that he wished to see what was being done among them, and to regain the military standards which they had captured, and which they [3]offered to surrender if he would come [4]in person to demand them. He therefore demanded from those [5]on this side of the river liberty to forage until he reached it.

[1] Subjunctive. [2] Praesertim. [3] Volo. [4] Ipse. [5] Cis.

CHAP. XVIII.

(1) Within ten days of the coming of the ambassadors, the bridge was begun. (2) Timber was collected and the whole work was brought to a successful conclusion. (3) Leaving behind the ambassadors, who had asked him not [1]to begin the bridge, he led the army across. (4) If the Sugambri had asked for peace, they would not now be [2]in the seclusion of the woods. (5) They have left their

country on the advice of the Tencteri, and are hiding among their friends. (6) The guard of the bridge, exhorted by many German states, ordered the hostages to carry away all their [3]goods.

[1] Say "not to begin to make the bridge." [2] "In seclusion and in the woods." This is a Latin figure of speech called Hendiadys. [3] Omnia sua. Omit "goods."

CHAPS. XVI AND XVII.

Many states thought that it was unjust for Caesar to build a bridge, since he had promised the Germans [1]after the repulse of Ariovistus, that the Rhine should be the boundary of the Roman Empire. Caesar wished, however, not [2]the surrender of the inhabitants of this territory, but to bring aid to the Ubii, who were hard pressed. State affairs had been finished, and he considered that the Roman name, which had already crossed the Meuse, should come to the ears of the furthest nations of Germany. When the bridge was [3]actually begun the Sugambri prepared to leave their territory and to hide among the woods. Caesar, however, promised them terms of peace, [4]on condition that they send him hostages. So great was the prestige of the Roman name that the hostages came within ten days after the bridge was begun.

[1] Post Ariovistum pulsum; or use the ablative absolute, Ariovisto pulso. [2] Use the verb dedo, but remember that it is transitive. [3] Re vera. [4] S

CHAP. XIX.

(1) He delayed eighteen days in all, in order to cut down the corn and burn their dwellings. (2) Returning to the confines of the Ubii, he found out from them that the Suebi had promised to aid the Sugambri. (3) In order to aid the Ubii, who had been hard pressed by this nation, he determined not to lead back his army till he had taken vengeance on their enemies. (4) [1]This resolve struck such

fear into the Suebi that they sent away their wives and children, and went to the woods, to await the approach of the Romans. (5) They assembled at a spot which they had chosen, and determined [2]to fight it out [3]in defence of the territory which they held. (6) But Caesar, thinking he had carried out all the [4]purposes which had led him to cross the Rhine, recrossed the bridge and destroyed it.

[1] "By which resolve (consilium) such fear was struck into the Suebi that." [2] Decerto. [3] Pro. [4] Res.

CHAPS. XVI, XVIII AND XIX.

Such was the fear of the Germans after this last battle that hearing of the approach of Caesar, they determined to leave their homes, and to place their wives and children in the concealment of the woods. To do this they considered that ten days [1]would be [2]enough. Caesar, who had already brought the timber to the appointed spot, completed the whole work in a few days, and led the army across, leaving a strong guard at the head of the bridge. Meanwhile the Suebi were hastening their preparations for flight, and sending messengers to announce to the Sugambri that, after holding council, they had resolved to burn the corn in the fields and to flee to the woods. These, [3]in true German style, at once promised Caesar that they would give him hostages and do his commands.

[1] Present infinitive. [2] Satis. [3] More Germanico.

CHAP. XX.

(1) [1]After his return from Germany, Caesar rashly resolved to invade Britain during the same summer. (2) Though small time for waging war before winter [2]remained, he thought that it would be very useful to visit at least the sea-coast. (3) He knew that the inhabitants had furnished aid and ships to the Gauls. (4) The Gallic merchants

whom he called together, knew nothing whatever about the greater part of the island. (5) They could tell him almost nothing about its inhabitants, or their form of government. (6) He hoped, however, to be able to learn from them [3]the size and the character of its harbours.

[1] Quum + pluperfect subjunctive. [2] Fuit. [3] Use clauses with quantus and qualis.

CHAP. XXI.

(1) He therefore commanded Volusenus to survey the districts opposite Gaul, and to make a report. (2) He himself set out into (the territories of) the Morini, [1]wishing to find a suitable crossing place into Britain. (3) Many States from the island sent ambassadors [2]to promise fidelity to him. (4) He exhorted [3]them to return to the island, and to perform [4]their promises. (5) With them he sent Commius, [5]ordering him to visit all whose influence was considered [6]especially great. (6) Meanwhile Volusenus had returned, and reported that he had not dared to disembark.

[1] "In order that he might find." [2] Qui + subjunctive. [3] Relative [4] Relative clause. [5] "Whom he ordered." [6] Superlative.

CHAPS. XIX TO XXI.

After spending a few days across the Rhine, in which he discovered for the first time the power of the German tribes, Caesar resolved to make a voyage into Britain, to find out what he could about this almost unknown island. Ambassadors had come from many of its tribes, and in our Gallic wars they had sent over forces to our enemies; but [1]he did not wish so much to take vengeance for this as to explore its harbours and coast, and to find out the [2]manners and customs of its inhabitants. He sent Cains Volusenus in a man of war by the shortest crossing, but he, though considered faithful by Caesar, returned after

four days, and said that he did not dare to trust himself to barbarians who inspired fear even in the merchants who visited them.

[1] Minus voluit—quam. [2] Mores.

CHAP. XXII.

(1) The Morini sent ambassadors to Caesar to apologize for what they had done. (2) On account of the season of the year, Caesar did not wish to make war upon them. (3) [1]He therefore levied hostages upon them, and said that he was willing to receive them into allegiance. (4) Caesar collected [2]as great a number of merchant vessels and of ships of war as possible, and apportioned them to the legions. (5) Eighteen, which were not able to reach the appointed spot, he apportioned to the cavalry. (6) He ordered his lieutenant to lead them to the harbour, where the ships had been prepared, and to leave a garrison there.

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] Quam maximum numerum.

CHAPS. XX TO XXII.

While Caesar [1]was awaiting (the return of) the man of war in which Volusenus had set out to explore the coasts of Britain, ambassadors came to him from many states of the island. Caesar [2]made [3]them liberal promises, and said that if they gave hostages and submitted to the suzerainty of the Roman people, he would consider it sufficient. He had no [4]means of crossing into Britain unless those whose influence was considered greatest in the maritime regions were faithful to him, and it had fallen out very fortunately that these embassies came at so suitable a time. Meanwhile Volusenus returned, but what he had seen was [5]of such small importance that Caesar resolved to leave him

behind in Gaul among those cantons of the Morini who had not given their allegiance to the Roman people.

[1] Present indicative. [2] Perfect participle. [3] Relative. [4] Facultas. Tantul-is.

CHAP. XXIII.

(1) After settling everything which concerned his [1]departure, Caesar set sail at the third watch. (2) The cavalry embarked, and followed him rather more slowly than Caesar wished. (3) When he came within sight of Britain, he was not able to land on account of the hills, from which the enemy could throw darts upon the beach. (4) He therefore summoned his officers, and warned them that he wished everything to be carried out by them at the proper time. (5) [2]In these naval matters, said he, everything [3]has to be done [4]as quickly as possible. (6) Having got a favourable wind, he weighed anchor, and proceeded seven miles to a more open beach.

[1] Profectio. [2] Oratio Obliqua. [3] Gerundive. Quam celerrime.

CHAP. XXIV.

(1) The barbarians [1]had followed our ships, and began to hurl darts [2]to prevent us from landing. (2) Our men [3]had to spring down from the ships and advance with great difficulty to dry ground. (3) The barbarians, whose limbs were free, and who knew the ground, urged their horses to the attack. (4) [4]For this reason our men showed less eagerness than was their custom. (5) The barbarians hurled their darts upon the ships, and [5]especially upon those who were disembarking. (6) Oppressed by the weight of their armour, the Romans could with great difficulty stand firm in the deep water.

[1] Perfect participle. [2] Ne + subjunctive. [3] "It had to be sprung (gerundive) by our men" (dat.). [4] Qua de causa. [5] Praesertim.

CHAPS. XXII TO XXIV.

The Morini, who possessed the harbours, from which he wished to take over his legions, sent hostages, and promised to collect ships. Caesar resolved to transport two legions and a few cavalry. [1]These he thought would be enough to terrify the Britons, [2]while [3]he would be able to leave the rest of the army among those tribes of Gaul who had not yet been received into the allegiance of the Roman people. When he reached the Island, he found that the forces of the enemy were in arms, and when he proceeded along the shore, they followed him in war-chariots. Our men, altogether unused to fighting from on shipboard against an enemy on dry land, were hard pressed, and did not [4]show that zeal which Caesar wished. He therefore delayed [5]until three o'clock for the arrival of the transports, in which the cavalry had embarked; when these did not come, he ordered the soldiers to leap down from the ships, and to fight among the billows.

[1] Relative. [2] Omit. [3] Present infinitive. [4] Utor. [5] "To the ninth hour."

CHAP. XXV.

(1) Caesar ordered the war-ships to charge the enemy on the exposed flank. (2) The barbarians, frightened by our engines, hesitated, halted, and began to retreat. (3) One of our men with a loud voice [1]implored the gods that no disgrace might befall the legion, and then flung the eagle into the water. (4) "Follow me, Comrades," [2]said he, "and fulfil your duty to your General." (5) [3]With these words, he leaped down into the sea, and began to approach the enemy. (6) This greatly helped our men, for [4]after

mutually exhorting each other, [5]they did not hesitate, but jumped down.

[1] Perfect participle. [2] Inquit. [3] "Which when he had said." [4] Perfect participle. [5] "No one hesitating." Ablative absolute.

CHAPS. XXIII TO XXV.

[1]After awaiting for five hours ([2]the arrival of) the rest of the ships, [3]he summoned the soldiers and ordered them to do at a moment's notice whatever their officers advised. [4]This is not only demanded by the nature of military science, [5]he said, but also by that of naval warfare.

The chief difficulty which he found was that the ships could not anchor except in deep water, where the soldiers, if they jumped down, had their hands impeded. Meanwhile the enemy, accustomed to this kind of warfare, advanced boldly, but were driven off by arrows and javelins from the men of war, which were anchored on their exposed flank, and [6]proved of great assistance. Our men would have hesitated, but followed the eagle-bearer of the tenth legion, who jumped [7]eagerly down with the eagle ([2]in his hands).

[1] Quum + pluperfect subjunctive. [2] Omit the words in brackets. [3] Ablative absolute. [4] Oratio Obliqua. [5] Omit. [6] Fuerunt. [7] Summa alacritate.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a.	active.	*dep.*	deponent.	*num.*	numeral.
abl.	ablative.	*dist.*	distributive.	*ord.*	ordinal.
acc.	accusative.	*f.*	feminine.	*partic.*	participle.
adj.	adjective.	*freq.*	frequentative.	*plur.*	plural.
adv.	adverb.	*impers.*	impersonal.	*possess.*	possessive.
app.	appendix.	*indecl.*	indeclinable.	*rel.*	relative.
c.	common.	*interrog.*	interrogative.	*sing.*	singular.
card.	cardinal.	*irreg.*	irregular.	*superl.*	superlative.
comp.	comparative.	*m.*	masculine.	*v.*	verb.
conj.	conjunction.	*n.*	neuter.		

The numerals after nouns and verbs refer to declensions and conjugations respectively.

A

A or **ab**, *prep.* with *abl.* by, from.

abdo, *v.a.* 3, **abdĭdi**, **abdĭtum**, hide.

abĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **abiēci**, **abiectum**, throw away.

ăbĭes, 3, *f.* **abiētis**, fir.

absisto, *v.n.* 3, **abstĭti**, stand aloof from, desist.

absum, *v.n.* **abesse**, **abfui**, be absent, distant.

ac (**atque**), *conj.* and, and besides. See note on Bk. iv. ch. xiii. 14.

accēdo, *v.n.* 3, **accessi**, **accessum**, come near, approach, be added. Used as passive of **addo**: **accedit quod**, there is besides the fact that.

accĭdo, *v.n.* 3, **accĭdi**, happen (**ad-cado**).

accīdo, *v.a.* 3, **accīdi**, **accīsum**, cut into (**ad-caedo**).

accĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **accēpi**, **acceptum**, receive, accept, receive news.

accūrāte, *adv.* carefully, exactly.

ācerrĭme, *adv. superl.* of **acriter**.

ācies, 5, *f.* line, line of battle, army in battle.

ācrĭter, *adv.* of **acer**, fiercely, keenly, stubbornly.

ācrĭus, *adv. comp.* of **acriter**.

actŭārius, *adj.* driven by oars.

ad, *prep.* with *acc.* to, towards, at, near (special meanings given in notes).

adactus. See **adigo**.

ădaequo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, make equal to, equal.

addo, *v.a.* 3, **addĭdi**, **additum**, add.

adduco, *v.a.* 3, **adduxi**, **adductum**, lead to; in *pass.* induce.

ădemptus. See **adimo.**

ădĕo, *v.n.* 4, **adire**, **adii**, **aditum**, go to, approach.

ădĕo, *adv.* thus, so, so far.

adfĕro (*aff.*), *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **adferre**, **adtŭli**, **adlātum**, bring forward, produce, allege.

adfĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **adficere**, **adfēci**, **adfectum**, influence, affect, treat (**ad-facio**).

adflicto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, keep striking, shatter, damage.

adfĭgo, *v.a.* 3, **adfixi**, **adflictum**, cast down, shatter.

adgrĕgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, join to.

ădhaereo, *v.n.* 2, **adhaesi**, **adhaesum**, stick to.

ădhĭbeo, *v.* 3, **-ui**, **-itum**, call in, employ, consult (**ad-habeo**).

ădhortor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, encourage.

ădĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **adicere**, **adiēci**, **adiectum**, add (**ad-iacio**).

ădĭgo, *v.a.* 3, **adēgi**, **adactum**, bring to, drive to (**ad-ago**).

ădĭmo, *v.a.* 3, **adēmi**, **ademptum**, take away, with *acc.* of thing, *dat.* of person (**ad-emo**).

ădĭpiscor, *v. dep.* 3, **adeptus sum**, obtain.

ădĭtus, 4, *m.* approach, access.

adiungo, *v.a.* 3, **adiunxi**, **adiunctum**, join to.

adiūtor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, helper.

admĭnister, 2, *m.* **administri**, agent, attendant.

admĭnistro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, manage, execute, conduct.

admĭror, *v. dep.* 1, **admiratus sum**, admire, wonder at.

admitto, *v.a.* 3, **admīsi**, **admissum**, admit, commit.

admŏdum, *adv.* much, quite.

admŏneo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui**, **-itum**, warn, advise.

ădŭlescens, *adj.* **-entis**, young, the younger; *subst.* a youth, boy.

ădŏrior, *v. dep.* 3 and 4 (*irreg.*), **adortus sum**, attack.

adpello, *v.a.* 3, **adpŭli**, **adpulsum**, drive on, put in (of ships).

adplico, *v.a.* 1, **adplicui**, **adplicĭtum**, fasten.

adporto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, bring to, convey.

adprōpinquo, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, be near to, approach, with *dat.*

adsĭduus, *adj.* continual.

adsuēfacio (*ass.*), *v.a.* 3, **adsuefēci**, **adsuefactum**, accustom.

adsuesco (*ass.*), *v.n.* 3, **adsuēvi**, **adsuētum**, become accustomed.

adtingo (*att.*), *v.a.* 3, **adtĭgi**, **adtactum**, touch, border on, reach to.

adtrĭbuo (*att.*), *v.a.* 3, **adtribui**, **adtribūtum**, add to, assign.

adventus, 4, *m.* arrival.

adversus, *adj.* turned towards, opposite, contrary to, unfavourable.

advŏlo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, fly to, hasten to.

aedĭfĭcium, 2, *n.* a building.

aedĭfĭco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, build.

aegre, *adv.* with difficulty.

aequinoctium, 2, *n.* the equinox.

aequus, *adj.* level, equal, fair, favourable.

aes, 3, *n.* **aeris**, bronze.

aestas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, summer.

aestĭmo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, estimate, reckon, consider.

aestus, 4, *m.* tide, current.

aetas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, age, life.

affĭcio. See **adficio.**

ăger, 2, *m.* **agri**, land, territory.

agmen, 3, *n.* **-ĭnis**, army on march, column.

ăgo, *v.a.* 3, **ēgi**, **actum**, drive, do, urge.

ălăcer, *adj.* **alacris**, **alacre**, keen, brisk.

ălacrĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, keenness, eagerness.

ălias, *adv.* at another time, at one time.

ăliēnus, *adj.* belonging to another, foreign, disadvantageous.

ălio, *adv.* elsewhere.

ălĭquis (in agreement with noun, **aliqui**), *pron.* some one.

ălĭquot, *adv.* several.

ălĭter, *adv.* otherwise.

ălius, alia, aliud, *pron.* other, another: **alius . . . alius,** one . . . another.

ălo, *v.a.* 3, **alui, altum,** nourish, foster, maintain, keep.

alter, *pron.* **alterius,** one of two, the other.

altĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis,** height, depth.

altus, *adj.* high, deep.

āmentia, 1, *f.* madness, folly.

amentum, 2, *n.* strap, thong.

āmīcĭtia, 1, *f.* friendship.

āmīcus, *adj.* friendly; *noun,* a friend.

amitto, *v.a.* 3, **amīsi, amissum,** lose.

amplĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis,** width, size, power.

amplius, *adv. comp.* of **ample,** more, further.

amplus, *adj.* large, great, powerful, noble (of birth).

ancōra, 1, *f.* anchor; **an. tollere,** weigh anchor; **an. iacere,** cast anchor; **in ancoris,** at anchor.

angustiae, 1, *f.* only in *plur.* narrowness, narrowing.

angustius, *adv. comp.* of **anguste,** more narrowly, within narrower limits.

angustus, *adj.* narrow.

ănĭmadverto, *v.a.* 3, **animadverti, animadversum,** give heed to, observe.

ănĭmus, 2, *m.* mind, thought, courage, fancy.

annōtĭnus, *adj.* last year's.

annus, 2, *m.* year.

anser, 3, *m.* **ansĕris,** a goose.

ante, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* before.

antĕcēdo, *v.n.* 3, **antecessi, antecessum,** go in front, precede.

antĕcursor, 3, *m.* **-ōris,** forerunner; in *plur.* advance-guard, scouts.

antĕpōno, *v.a.* 3, **antepŏsui, antepositum,** set before, prefer.

ăpertus, *adj.* open, exposed.

appello, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum,** call, name, call upon by name.

aptus, *adj.* fit, suitable.

apud, *prep.* with *acc.* at, among, with.

ăqua, 1, *f.* water.

ăquātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis,** getting water, watering.

ăquĭla, 1, *f.* eagle, standard of the legion.

ăquĭlĭfer, 2, *m.* **aquilifĕri,** standard-bearer. See Intro. p. xxiv.

arbĭter, 2, *m.* **arbitri,** witness, judge, umpire.

arbĭtror, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum,** think, judge, consider.

arbor, 3, *f.* **arbŏris,** tree.

ardeo, *v.n.* 2, be on fire, be aflame, burn.

argentum, 2, *n.* silver.

ārĭdus, *adj.* dry; in *n. sing.* as *noun,* dry ground.

ăriēs, 3, *m.* **ariĕtis,** ram, battering-ram, support, buttress.

arma, 2, *n. plur.* arms, weapons.

armāmenta, 2, *n. plur.* tackle, gear, rigging.

armātus, *adj.* armed; *noun* 2, *m.* armed man.

armo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum,** arm, equip.

ars, 3, *f.* **artis,** art, skill.

artius, *adv. comp.* of **arte,** more closely, more tightly.

ascendo, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, **ascendi, ascensum,** ascend, climb.

asper, *adj.* **aspĕra, aspĕrum,** rough, harsh, severe.

ass. See **ads.**

at, *conj.* but, yet.

atque. See **ac.**

attingo. See **adtingo.**

attrĭbŭo. See **adtribuo.**
auctor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, adviser, instigator.
auctōrĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, authority, influence, weight.
audacter, *adv.* of **audax**, boldly.
audeo, *v.n.* 2, **ausus sum**, dare.
audiens, *adj.* **-entis**, obedient.
audio, *v.a.* 4, **-īvi**, **-ītum**, hear, learn, give audience to.
audītio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, report.
augeo, *v.a.* 2, **auxi**, **auctum**, increase.
aurīga, 1, *m.* charioteer.
aut, *conj.* or, either.
autem, *conj.* but, moreover.
auxĭlior, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, help, give aid to.
auxĭlium, 2, *n.* help, aid; in *plur.* auxiliary forces, contingents.
āverto, *v.a.* 3, **averti**, **aversum**, turn aside.
āvis, 3, *f.* bird.
āvus, 2, *m.* grandfather.

B

Balteus, 2, *m.* sword-belt.
barbărus, *adj.* wild, uncivilised; as *noun* in *plur.* the barbarians, natives.
bellĭcōsus, *adj.* warlike.
bellor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, make war.
bellum, 2, *n.* war.
bĕne, *adv.* well.
bĕnĕfĭcium, 2, *n.* kindness, favour.
bĕnĕvŏlentia, 1, *f.* goodwill, kindness.
bīni, *dist. num.* two each, a pair of.
bīpĕdālis, *adj.* of two feet.
bīpertīto, *adv.* in two divisions.
bos, 3, *c.* **bŏvis**, ox.
brĕvis, *adj.* short, brief.
brūma, 1, *f.* winter, the winter solstice.

C

Cădo, *v.n.* 3, **cecĭdi**, **cāsum**, fall, be killed.
caedes, 3, *f.* **caedis**, slaughter.
caerŭleus, *adj.* blue.
caespes, 3, *m.* **caespĭtis**, turf, sod.
călămĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, disaster.
căpio, *v.a.* 3, **capere**, **cēpi**, **captum**, take, capture (nautical term), make.
captus, 4, *m.* capacity, comprehension.
căput, 3, *n.* **capĭtis**, head, mouth (of a river).
căro, 3, *f.* **carnis**, flesh.
carrus, 2, *m.* waggon, cart.
căseus, 2, *m.* cheese.
castra, 2, *n. plur.* camp.
căsus, 4, *m.* accident, chance.
causa, 1, *f.* cause, reason; in *abl. sing.* as *prep.* for the sake of, for the purpose of.
cēdo, *v.n.* 3, **cessi**, **cessum**, yield, retire.
cĕler, *adj.* **celĕris**, **celere**, swift.
cĕlĕrĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, speed, swiftness.
cĕlĕrĭter, *adv.* swiftly, quickly.
centum, *card. num.* a hundred.
centūrio, 3, *m.* **-ōnis**, a centurion. See Intro. p. xxiii.
certe, *adv.* certainly, exactly.
certus, *adj.* certain, sure; **certior fieri**, to be informed, learn.
cētĕrus, *adj.* the rest; mostly in *plur.* as *noun*, the rest, the others.
cĭbus, 2, *m.* food.
cingo, *v.a.* 3, **cinxi**, **cinctum**, surround.
circĭter, *adv.* about.
circuĭtus, 4, *m.* a going round, compass, circumference.
circum, *prep.* with *acc.* and *adv.* around.
circumcīdo, *v.a.* 3, **circumcīsi**, **circumcīsum**, cut round (**circum**, **caedo**).
circumdo, *v.a.* 1, **circumdĕdi**, **cir-**

cumdātum, put round, sur round. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxxii. 19.

circumeo, *v.a.* and *n.* 4, *irreg.* **circumire, circumivi** or **circumii, circumītum**, go round, visit.

circumsisto, *v.a.* 3, **circumstĭti**, stand round, surround.

circumvēnio, *v.a.* 4, **circumvēni, circumventum**, surround, cut off.

cis, citra, *prep.* with *acc.* on this side.

cĭtātus, *adj.* (*perf. part. pass.* of **cito**), at full speed, swift.

cĭtĕrior, *adj. comp.* of **citra, -ōris**, on the nearer side, hither.

cĭtissime, *adv. superl.* of **cito**, most quickly.

cīvĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, a state, citizenship.

clam, *adv.* secretly.

clāmĭto, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, keep shutting out. *Freq.* of **clamo**.

clāmor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, a shout.

clārus, *adj.* clear, loud.

clĭens, 3, *m.* **clientis**, a dependant, vassal.

coactus, 4, *m.* compulsion.

coeo, *v.n.* 4, **coire, coivi** or **coii, coĭtum**, come together, assemble.

coerceo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui, -ĭtum**, compel, restrain.

coepi, *v.n.* 3, perfect used as present, **coepisse**, *dep. perf.* **coeptus sum**, begin. See on Bk. iv. ch. xiv. 13.

cōgĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, consider, reflect on.

cognĭtus, *perf. part. pass.* of **cognosco**.

cognosco, *v.a.* 3, **cognōvi, cognĭtum**, discover, learn; in perfect and tenses formed from it, know.

cōgo, *v.a.* 3, **coēgi, coactum**, collect, compel (**co-ago**).

cōhors, 3, *f.* **cohortis**, cohort. See Intro. pp. xxi-xxiv.

cōhortor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, exhort, encourage.

coĭcio. See **conicio**.

collis, 3, *m.* hill.

colligo, *v.a.* 3, **collēgi, collectum**, collect, get together.

color, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, colour.

commĕātus, 4, *m.* journey, relay, supplies.

commĕmŏro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, call to mind, relate.

commendo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, entrust.

commĭlĭto, 3, *m.* **-ōnis**, fellow-soldier.

committo, *v.a.* 3, **commīsi, commissum**, bring together, entrust, commit; **com. pugnam, proelium**, join battle.

commŏde, *adv.* conveniently, suitably, advantageously.

commŏdum, 2, *n.* advantage.

commŏdus, *adj.* convenient, suitable.

commŏror, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, delay.

communĭco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, share with, consult, impart.

communis, *adj.* common, general.

commūtātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, change.

compăro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, get ready, prepare.

compĕrio, *v.a.* 4, **compĕri, compertum**, discover, ascertain.

compleo, *v.a.* 2, **complēvi, complētum**, fill, man (a vessel).

complūres, *adj. plur.* very many; as *noun*, a number of.

comporto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, bring together, collect.

comprĕhendo, *v.a.* 3, **comprehendi, comprehensum**, arrest, seize.

comprōbo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, confirm.

concēdo, *v.a.* 3, **concessi, concessum**, grant, yield.

concĭdo, *v.n.* 3, **concĭdi**, fall down.

concĭlio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, reconcile.

concĭlium, 2, *n.* council, assembly.

concīto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, arouse, stir up.
conclāmo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, shout together.
concurro, *v.n.* 3, **concurri**, **concursum**, run together.
concurso, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, run together, run to and fro. *Freq.* of **concurro.**
concursus, 4, *m.* rushing together, concourse.
condīcio, 3, *f.* **-onis**, condition, terms.
condūco, *v.a.* 3, **conduxi**, **conductum**, bring together, hire.
confĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **conferre**, **contŭli**, **conlātum** (**collātum**), bring together.
confertus, *perf. part. pass.* of **confercio**, crowded, closely packed.
confestim, *adv.* hurriedly, immediately.
confĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **conficere**, **confēci**, **confectum**, accomplish, finish, exhaust.
confīdo, *v.n.* 3, **confīsus sum**, trust, believe in.
confirmo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, make firm, encourage, establish, assert.
confĭteor, *v. dep.* 2, **confessus sum**, acknowledge, confess.
confluens, 3, *m.* **-entis**, confluence.
conĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **coniēci**, **coniectum**, hurl, fling.
coniungo, *v.a.* 3, **coniunxi**, **coniunctum**, join, unite.
coniurātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, a conspiracy.
conlaudo (*coll.*), *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, praise highly.
conlŏco (*coll.*), *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, set, station.
conlŏquium (*coll.*), 2, *n.* a conference.
conlŏquor, *v. dep.* 3, **conlocūtus sum**, converse, confer, parley.
cōnor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, try, attempt.
conscendo, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, **conscendi**, **conscensum**, embark, embark on.
conscientia, 1, *f.* consciousness.
consector, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, follow, pursue. *Freq.* of **consequor.**
consentio, *v.n.* 4, **consensi**, **consensum**, agree, sympathise with.
consĕquor, *v. dep.* 3, **consecūtus sum**, follow closely, attain, gain.
consīdo, *v.n.* 3, **consēdi**, **consessum**, settle.
consĭlium, 2, *n.* plan, scheme, stratagem, counsel, council, deliberation.
consīmilis, *adj.* very like.
consisto, *v.n.* 3, **constĭti**, stand firm, halt, consist in.
consōlor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, console, comfort.
conspectus, 4, *m.* sight, view.
conspĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **conspicere**, **conspexi**, **conspectum**, behold, descry, observe.
conspicor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, perceive.
constat, *v. impers.* it is well known, agreed.
consterno, *v.a.* 3, **constrāvi**, **constrātum**, strew over, cover.
constĭtuo, *v.a.* 3, **constitui**, **constitūtum**, draw up, settle, arrange, place, decide, resolve.
consuesco, *v.n* 3, **consuēvi**, **consuētum**, grow accustomed; (generally used only in perfect and tenses formed from it) be accustomed.
consuētūdo, 3, *f.* **-inis**, custom, habit.
consul, 3, *m.* **consŭlis**, a consul.
consŭlo, *v.n.* 3, **consului**, **consultum**, consult, consult for the interest of with *dat.*
consulto, *adv.* intentionally.
consūmo, *v.a.* 3, **consumpsi**, **consumptum**, use up, spend (of time).

consurgo, *v.n.* 3, **consurrexi**, **consurrectum**, arise, rise up.
contăbŭlo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, cover with planks.
contemno, *v.a.* 3, **contempsi**, **contemptum**, despise.
contemptio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, contempt.
contendo, *v.n.* 3, **contendi**, **contentum**, make for, hasten, strive, struggle; *a.* aim at.
contentio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, rivalry.
contestor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, call to witness.
contexo, *v.a.* 3, **contexui**, **contextum**, bind, hold together.
continens, 3, *f.* **-entis**, mainland; *adj.* unbroken, continuous.
contineo, *v.a.* 2, **continui**, **contentum**, restrain, contain.
contingo, *v.a.* 3, **contĭgi**, **contactum**, touch, reach.
continuus, *adj.* continual, continuous, unbroken.
contio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, assembly, parade, harangue.
contra, *prep.* with *acc.* against, contrary to, opposite; *adv.* on the other hand.
contrăho, *v.a.* 3, **contraxi**, **contractum**, draw together, draw in, contract.
contrārius, *adj.* opposite to, contrary to.
contrōversia, 1, *f.* contention, rivalry.
contŭmēlia, 1, *f.* insult.
convallis, 3, *f.* a valley.
convĕnio, *v.n.* 4, **convēni**, **conventum**, come together, assemble, muster.
conventus, 4, *m.* assembly, parade.
converto, *v.a.* 3, **converti**, **conversum**, turn.
convŏco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, call together, assemble.
coŏrior, *v. dep.* 4 (some forms of 3), **coortus sum**, arise.
cōpia, 1, *f.* supply, plenty; in *plur.* forces, stores.
corpus, 3, *n.* **corpŏris**, body.
cōrus, 2, *m.* north-west wind.
cŏtīdiānus, *adj.* daily.
cŏtīdie, *adv.* daily.
crātes, 3, *f. plur.* wicker-work, hurdles, fascines.
creber, **crebra**, **crebrum**, *adj.* frequent.
crēdo, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, **credĭdi**, **creditum**, believe, trust, with *dat.*; entrust, with *acc.*
crŭcĭātus, 4, *m.* torture.
crūs, 3, *n.* **crūris**, leg.
culpa, 1, *f.* fault, blame.
cultūra, 1, *f.* cultivation.
cum, *prep.* with *abl.* with; *rel. conj.* when, since, though. See App. II.
cunctor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, delay.
cŭpīde, *adv.* eagerly.
cŭpīdus, *adj.* eager for, desirous of.
cūr, *interrog.* and *rel. adv.* why.
cūro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, care for. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxix. 3.
currus, 4, *m.* chariot.
cursus, 4, *m.* course.
custōdia, 1, *f.* guard, watch, sentinel.

D

Damno, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, condemn.
de, *prep.* with *abl.* down from, from, concerning, owing to.
dēbeo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui**, **-ĭtum**, owe; *n.* ought (**de-habeo**).
dēcēdo, *v.n.* 3, **decessi**, **decessum**, depart.
dĕcem, *card. num.* ten.
decerno, *v.a.* and *n.* **decrevi**, **decretum**, decide, settle, resolve.
dĕcerto, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, fight to the end.
dĕcĭmus, *ord. num.* tenth.
declīvis, *adj.* sloping.
dēdĕcus, 3, *n.* **dedecŏris**, disgrace.
dēdĭtio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, surrender.
dēdo, *v.a.* 3, **dedĭdi**, **dedĭtum**, surrender, give up.

dēdūco, *v.a.* 3, **deduxi**, **deductum**, launch, withdraw.
dēfătīgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, weary, exhaust.
dēfectio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, revolt, defection.
dēfendo, *v.a.* 3, **defendi**, **defensum**, ward off, defend, protect.
dēfensor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, defender, protector. See on Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 23.
dēfĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **deferre**, **detŭli**, **delātum**, carry down, bring down, bring to hand, report.
dēfĭcio, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, **deficere**, **defēci**, **defectum**, *a.* fail, with *acc.*; *n.* run short, revolt.
dēfīgo, *v.a.* 3, **defixi**, **defixum**, fix down.
dēflŭo, *v.n.* 3, **defluxi**, **defluxum**, flow down.
dēformis, *adj.* misshapen, deformed.
dēĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **deicere**, **deiēci**, **deiectum**, cast down, unhorse, drive down, disappoint (**de-iacio**).
deinceps, *adv.* in succession.
dēlecto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, please, delight.
dēlīgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, fasten.
dēlĭgo, *v.a.* 3, **delēgi**, **delectum**, choose.
dēlītesco, *v.n.* 3, **delitui**, lie in ambush.
dēmentia, 1, *f.* madness, folly.
dēmĕto, *v.a.* 3, **demessui**, **demessum**, reap.
dēmīgro, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, move away, retire, evacuate.
dēmitto, *v.a.* 3, **demīsi**, **demissum**, send down, let down.
dēmo, *v.a.* 3, **dempsi**, **demptum**, take away (**de-emo**).
dēmonstro, *v. a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, point out, mention.
dēmum, *adv.* at length, at last.
dēni, *dist. num.* ten each.
densus, *adj.* thick, dense.
dēnuntio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, announce, declare.
dēperdo, *v.a.* 3, **deperdĭdi**, **deperdĭtum**, lose utterly.
dēpĕreo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **deperire**, **deperii**, be utterly lost, be wrecked, perish. Used as passive of **deperdo**.
dēpōno, *v.a* 3, **depŏsui**, **depositum**, put down, lay aside, lay apart.
dēprĕcor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, beg off, cry off, beg for mercy.
dēprĕhendo, *v.a.* 3, **deprehendi**, **deprehensum**, catch, seize.
dērecto, *adv.* straight, perpendicularly.
dērectus, *partic.* of **derĭgo**, lengthwise.
descendo, *v.n.* 3, **descendi**, **descensum**, descend, have recourse to, dismount.
dēsĕro, *v.a.* 3, **deserui**, **desertum**, abandon, desert.
dēsīdĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, need, desire, require.
dēsilio, *v.n.* 4, **desilui**, **desultum**, leap down (**de-salio**).
desisto, *v.n.* 3, **destĭti**, leave off, stop from.
despĕrātio, 3, *f.* **-onis**, despair.
despĕro, *v.a.* and *n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, despair, despair of.
dēsum, *v.n.* **deesse**, **defui**, be wanting.
dēterreo, *v.a.* 2, **deterrui**, **deterrĭtum**, frighten greatly, deter.
dētrīmentum, 2, *n.* loss.
dēturbo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, rout, dislodge.
deŭs, 2, *m.* god.
dēvĕho, *v.a.* 3, **devexi**, **devexum**, carry away, down.
dexter, *adj.* **dextra** or **dextĕra**, **dextrum** or **dextĕrum**, on the right-hand side, right.
dīco, *v.a.* and *n.* say, tell, mention, agree upon.
dictum, 2, *n.* word, command.
dies, 5, in *sing. c.*, in *plur. m.* day.

differo, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, *irreg.* **differre, distŭli, dilātum**, bear in different directions, differ (**dis-fero**).

difficultas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, difficulty.

diffido, *v.n.* 3, **diffisus sum**, distrust.

dignitas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, worth, dignity, position.

diiūdico, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, decide between, determine.

diligens, *adj.* **-entis**, careful.

diligentia, 1, *f.* carefulness.

dimensus, *partic.* of **dimĕtior**, measured. See on Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 8.

dimico, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, fight.

dimidium, 2, *n.* half.

dimitto, *v.a.* 3, **dimīsi, dimissum**, send different ways, let go, let slip, dismiss.

discedo, *v.n.* 3, **discessi, discessum**, depart.

discessus, 4, *m.* departure.

disciplina, 1, *f.* training, discipline.

disclūdo, *v.a.* 3, **disclūsi, disclūsum**, keep apart (**dis-claudo**).

dispar, *adj.* **dispăris**, unequal, unfair.

dispergo, *v.a.* 3, **dispersi, dispersum**, scatter (**dis-spargo**).

dispōno, *v.a.* 3, **dispōsui, dispositum**, distribute.

dispūtātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, discussion, dispute.

dissensio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, disagreement.

dissentio, *v.n.* 4, **dissensi, dissensum**, disagree.

dissimŭlo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, disguise, conceal.

dissipo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, scatter.

distĭneo, *v.a.* 2, **distinui, distentum**, hold apart (**dis-teneo**).

disto, *v.n.* 1, be apart, be distant.

distribuo, *v.a.* 3, **distribui, distribūtum**, divide, distribute, assign.

dĭū, *adv.* for a long time, long.

diūtĭnus, *adj.* lasting for a long time, enduring.

diūtius, *comp.* of **diu**, longer.

dīvīdo, *v.a.* 3, **divīsi, divīsum**, divide.

do, *v.a.* 1, **dĕdi, dătum**, give.

dŏceo, *v.a.* 2, **docui, doctum**, teach, inform.

dŏleo, *v.n.* 2, **dolui**, grieve.

dŏlor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, grief, pain.

dŏlus, 2, *m.* craft, guile.

domestĭcus, *adj.* internal, intestine.

dŏmus, 2 and 4, *f.* house, home; **domi** (*locative*), at home; **domum**, homewards, home; **domo**, from home.

dŭbĭtātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, doubt, hesitation.

dŭbĭto, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, doubt, hesitate.

dŭcenti, *card. num.* two hundred

dūco, *v.a.* 3, **duxi, ductum**, lead, bring, hold, consider.

dum, *rel. conj.* whilst, until.

dŭo, duae, duo, *card. num.* two.

dŭodēni, *dist. num.* twelve each.

duplĭco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, double.

dūrus, *adj.* hard.

dux, 3, *m.* **dūcis**, leader, general, chief, guide.

E

E, ex, *prep.* with *abl.* out of, from, according to.

ēdūco, *v.a.* 3, **eduxi, eductum**, lead out.

effēmĭno, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, make effeminate, weaken, enervate.

effĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **efferre, extŭli, elātum**, bring out, publish; in *pass.* be elated.

efficio, *v.a.* 3, **efficere, effēci, effectum**, make, accomplish, render, cause.

effŭgio, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, **effugere, effūgi**, escape.

effundo, *v.a.* 3, **effūdi, effūsum**, pour forth.
ĕgo, *pers. pron.* I.
ēgrĕdior, *v. dep.* 3, **egredi, egressus sum**, go out, disembark.
egrĕgie, *adv.* excellently.
egrĕgius, *adj.* excellent.
egressus, 4, *m.* landing, disembarkation.
ēĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **eicere, eiēci, eiectum**, cast out, drive out; with **se**, rush out (**e-iacio**).
ēlābor, *v. dep.* 3, **elapsus sum**, escape from.
ēlĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **elicere, elicui, elicĭtum**, entice forth.
ēmitto, *v.a.* 3, **emīsi, emissum**, send out.
ĕnim, *conj.* for.
ēnuntio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, announce.
ĕo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **ire, ivi** or **ii, ĭtum**, go.
ĕo, *adv.* thither; with comparatives, by so much.
eŏdem, *adv.* to the same place.
ephippiātus, *adj.* furnished with trappings, caparisoned.
ephippium, 2, *n.* trappings.
ĕpistŏla, 1, *f.* letter, despatch.
ĕques, 3, *m.* **equĭtis**, horseman.
ĕquester, equestris, equestre, *adj.* of horse, of cavalry.
ĕquĭtātus, 4, *m.* cavalry.
ĕquus, 2, *m.* a horse.
erga, *prep.* with *acc.* towards.
ērĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **eripui, ereptum**, snatch away from, rescue.
erro, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, make a mistake, wander.
ēruptio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, a sally.
essĕdārius, 2, *m.* charioteer.
essĕdum, 2, *n.* war-chariot.
et, *conj.* and, both, also, even.
ĕtiam, *conj.* also, even.
etsi, *rel. conj.* even if, although.
ēvĕnio, *v.n.* 4, **evēni, eventum**, turn out, result.
ēventus, 4, *m.* result.
ēvŏco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, call forth, summon.
ex. See **e.**
exăgĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, harass.
exămĭno, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, weigh in the balance.
exănĭmo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, kill.
exardesco, *v.n.* 3, **exarsi, exarsum**, be inflamed.
excēdo, *v.n.* 3, **excessi, excessum**, leave, withdraw.
excĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **excipere, excepi, exceptum**, receive, sustain, relieve.
excĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, raise, erect, arouse, incite.
exclūdo, *v.a.* 3, **exclusi, exclusum**, shut out from, cut off (**ex-claudo**).
excōgĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, think out, contrive, devise.
excūso, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, excuse.
exeo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **exire, exivi** or **exii, exĭtum**, go out.
exerceo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui, -ĭtum**, employ, exercise, drill.
exercĭtātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, exercise, practice, training.
exercĭtus, 4, *m.* army.
exhaurio, *v.a.* 4, **exhausi, exhaustum**, draw out, empty.
exĭgŭĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, smallness.
exiguus, *adj.* small, scanty.
existĭmātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, opinion.
existĭmo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, think, consider (**ex-aestimo**).
existo, *v.n.* 3, **exstiti, exstĭtum**, arise.
exĭtus, 4, *m.* result, issue, end, close.
expecto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, await, expect.
expĕdĭtio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, foray, incursion, expedition.
expĕdĭtus, *adj.* unhampered, free, ready.
expello, *v.a.* 3, **expŭli, expulsum**, drive out.
expĕrior, *v. dep.* 4, **expertus sum**, try, experience.

expĭo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, atone for, make good.
explōrātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, scout, spy.
explōro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, search out, spy out; with **victoriam**, assure victory.
expōno, *v.a.* 3, **expōsui**, **expōsĭtum**, display, disembark.
exporto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, carry out, export.
exsisto. See **existo**.
exspecto. See **expecto**.
extinguo (*exst.*), *v.a.* 3, **extīnxi**, **extinctum**, destroy.
exto (*exst.*), *v.n.* 1 (no *perf.* or *sup.*), stand out, project.
extra, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* outside.
extrăho, *v.a.* 3, **extraxi**, **extractum**, draw out, waste.
extrēmus, *adj. superl.* farthest, last.
exul (*exs.*), 3, *m.* **exŭlis**, exile.
exŭo, *v.a.* 3, **exui**, **exūtum**, strip off, make to throw away.

F

Făber, 2, *m.* **fabri**, a smith.
făcĭle, *adv.* of **facilis**, easily.
făcĭlis, *adj.* easy.
făcinus, 3, *n.* **-ŏris**, crime, guilt.
făcio, *v.a.* 3, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, do, make, act; *pass.* **fio**, **fieri**, become.
factio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, faction, party.
factum, 2, *n.* deed, act.
facultas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, opportunity, means, chance.
fāgus, 2, *f.* beech-tree.
fallo, *v.a.* and *n.* **fĕfelli**, **falsum**, deceive, escape notice of, play false.
falx, 3, *f.* **falcis**, sickle, grappling-hook (for destroying fortifications).
fāma, 1, *f.* report.
fāmes, 3, *f.* (*abl.* **famē**, as of 5th decl.), hunger, famine.
fămĭlĭāris, 3, *m.* close friend.
fas, *n.* (indecl.), right, lawful.
fastĭgāte, *adv.* sloping.
fēlĭcĭter, *adv.* of **felix**, happily, successfully.
fĕmur, 3, *n.* **femŏris** or **femĭnis**, thigh.
fĕra, 1, *f.* wild animal.
fĕre, *adv.* almost, nearly.
fĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **ferre**, **tŭli**, **lātum**, bear, carry, endure; in *pass.* are borne, rush.
ferrāmentum, 2, *n.* iron tool.
ferrum, 2, *n.* iron.
fertĭlis, *adj.* fertile.
fĕrus, *adj.* wild, savage.
fervĕfăcio, *v.a.* 3, **fervefacere**, **fervefēci**, **fervefactum**, make red hot.
ferveo, *v.n.* 2, **ferbui** or **fervi**, be red hot.
fĭbŭla, 1, *f.* brace, tie. See on Bk. iv. ch. xvii. 17.
fĭdēlis, *adj.* faithful, loyal.
fĭdes, 5, *f.* faith, word (of honour), credit, loyalty, protection.
fĭgūra, 1, *f.* shape, build.
fĭlius, 2, *m.* son.
fingo, *v.a.* 3, **finxi**, **fictum**, invent.
fĭnio, *v.a.* 4, **-ivi**, **-ītum**, end, be the limit of.
fīnis, 3, *m.* (rarely *f.*), end, limit, boundary; in *plur.* territory.
fīnĭtĭmus, *adj.* bordering, neighbouring; as *noun*, neighbour.
fĭo, *v.n. irreg.* (used as *pass.* of **facio**), **fĭĕri**, **factus sum**, be made, become, happen.
fīrmĭter, *adv.* firmly.
fīrmĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, strength, stability.
firmus, *adj.* strong.
fistūca, 1, *f.* rammer.
flamma, 1, *f.* flame.
flecto, *v.a.* 3, **flexi**, **flexum**, bend, turn.
flētus, 4, *m.* weeping.
flo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, blow.
flōrens, *partic.* used as *adj.* **-entis**, flourishing.
fluctus, 4, *m.* wave.
flūmen, 3, *n.* **-ĭnis**, river.

forma, 1, *f.* shape.
forte, *adv.* by chance; with **ne**, **si**, perchance.
fortis, *adj.* brave, strong.
fortissĭme, *adv. superl.* of **fortĭter**, most bravely.
fortūna, 1, *f.* fortune, success.
fossa, 1, *f.* ditch, trench.
frango, *v.a.* 3, **frēgi**, **fractum**, break.
frāter, 3, *m.* **fratris**, brother.
frĕmĭtus, 4, *m.* noise, uproar.
frĕquens, *adj.* **-entis**, in large numbers (used in *plur.*)
frīgĭdus, *adj.* cold.
frīgus, 3, *n.* **frigŏris**, cold.
frūmentārius, *adj.* belonging to corn supply; **res frumentariae**, commissariat.
frūmentor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, get corn, forage.
frūmentum, 2, *n.* corn; in *plur.* crops.
frustrā, *adv.* in vain.
fŭga, 1, *f.* flight.
fŭgio, *v.n.* 3, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fŭgĭtum**, flee.
fūmus, 2, *m.* smoke.
funda, 1, *f.* sling.
fūnis, 3, *m.* rope, hawser.
fūsĭlis, *adj.* molten, liquid. See on Bk. v. ch. xliii. 2.

G

Gallīna, 1, *f.* hen.
gaudeo, *v.n.* 2, **gāvīsus sum**, rejoice.
gĕner, 2, *m.* **genĕri**, son-in-law.
gens, 3, *f.* **gentis**, race, nation.
gĕnus, 3, *n.* **gĕnĕris**, kind, class, family.
gĕro, *v.a.* 3, **gessi**, **gestum**, perform, carry out, wage.
glădius, 2, *m.* sword.
glans, 3, *f.* **glandis**, acorn, bullet, ball. See on Bk. v. ch. xliii. 1.
glōria, 1, *f.* glory, renown.
grātia, 1, *f.* favour, goodwill, influence; **gratiam referre**, return thanks.
grātŭlātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, congratulation.
grăvis, *adj.* heavy, serious, dangerous.
grăvĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, weight.
grăvĭter, *adv.* of **gravis**, heavily, severely; **graviter ferre**, take ill, be annoyed at.
gŭbernātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, helmsman, pilot.
gusto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, taste.

H

Hăbeo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui**, **-ĭtum**, have, hold, consider.
haud, *adv.* not.
hĭberna, 2, *n. plur.* winter quarters.
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, *pron.* this.
hic, *adv.* here.
hiĕmo and **hiĕmor**, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum** or **atus sum**, winter.
hiems, 3, *f.* **hiĕmis**, winter.
hŏmo, 3, *c.* **homĭnis**, a human being, man.
hŏnestus, *adj.* honourable, noble.
hŏnor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, honour, position.
hōra, 1, *f.* hour.
horrĭdus, *adj.* shaggy, dreadful.
hortor, *v. dep.* **-atus sum**, encourage, exhort.
hospĭtĭum, 2, *n.* friendship.
hostis, 3, *m.* enemy.
huc, *adv.* hither.
hūmānus, *adj.* civilised, human.
hūmĭlis, *adj.* lowly, small, shallow.
hūmĭlĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, shallowness.

I

Iăcio, *v.a.* 3, **iacere**, **iēci**, **iactum**, throw, hurl.
iăcŭlum, 2, *n.* javelin.
iam, *adv.* now, already.

ĭbi, *adv.* there.
idcirco, *adv.* for that reason.
ĭdem, eadem, ĭdem, *pron.* the same.
ĭdōneus, *adj.* suitable.
ignis, 3, *m.* fire.
ignōbĭlis, *adj.* unrenowned, obscure, lowly.
ignōro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, be ignorant of.
ignosco, *v.a.* 3, **ignōvi, ignōtum**, pardon. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxvii. 10.
ignōtus, *adj.* unknown.
ille, illa, illud, *pron.* that, he.
illo, *adv.* thither.
immānis, *adj.* huge, immense.
immitto, *v.a.* 3, **immīsi, immissum**, drive in, let in.
impĕdīmentum, 2, *n.* in *plur.* baggage.
impĕdio, *v.a.* 4, **-ivi** or **-ii, -ītum**, hinder, impede.
impĕdītus, *adj.* encumbered, entangled.
impello, *v.a.* 3, **impŭli, impulsum**, urge on.
impensus, *adj.* lavish, great.
impĕrātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, commander, general.
impĕrātum, 2, *n.* command.
impĕrītus, *adj.* unskilled with *gen.*
impĕrium, 2, *n.* command, sovereignty.
impĕro, *v.a.* and *n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, demand, command, order. See on Bk. iv. ch. iv. 2.
impĕtro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, gain a request, obtain.
impĕtus, 4, *m.* rush, onset, attack, charge, force.
implōro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, entreat, invoke.
importo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, import.
improvīsus, *adj.* sudden, unexpected; **de improviso**, unexpectedly.
imprūdens, *adj.* **-entis**, unaware.
imprūdentia, 1, *f.* want of foresight, imprudence.
īmus, *adj. superl.* of **infra**, lowest.
in, *prep.* with *acc.* into, against, in (of motion); with *abl.* in, among, on.
īnānis, *adj.* empty.
incendium, 2, *n.* fire, conflagration.
incertus, *adj.* uncertain, doubtful, unknown, groundless, wavering.
incĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **incipere, incēpi, inceptum**, begin (**in-capio**).
incĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, excite, spur on; with **se**, rush; **remis incitare**, row hard.
incognĭtus, *adj.* unknown.
incŏlo, *v.a.* 3, **incolui, incultum**, inhabit.
incolūmis, *adj.* safe, unharmed.
incommŏde, *adv.* unfortunately.
incommŏdum, 2, *n.* mishap, injury, disadvantage, trouble.
incrēdĭbĭlis, *adj.* incredible.
incursio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, raid, foray.
inde, *adv.* thence, next.
indĭco, *v.a.* 3, **indixi, indictum**, appoint, declare.
indignus, *adj.* with *abl.* unworthy.
indūtiae, 1, *f.* in *plur.* only, truce, armistice.
īneo, *v.a.* and *n.* 4, *irreg.* **inire, inii** or **inivi, ĭnĭtum**, enter, enter on, adopt.
īners, *adj.* **inertis**, lazy, unskilful.
infĕrior, *adj. comp.* of **infra**, **-ōris**, lower.
infĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **inferre, intŭli, inlātum**, wage (war).
infĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **inficere, infēci, infectum**, dye (**in-facio**).
infīnītus, *adj.* unbounded, unnumbered.
infirmĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, weakness, instability.
infirmus, *adj.* weak, feeble, unseaworthy.
infĭuo, *v.n.* 3, **influxi, influxum**, flow into.
infra, *prep.* with *acc.* and *adv.* below.

ingens, *adj.* **ingentis**, huge, vast.
ingrĕdior, *v. dep.* 3, **ingressus sum**, go into, enter (**in-gradior**).
inĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **inicere**, **iniēci**, **iniectum**, lay upon, inspire (**in-iacio**).
inīmīcus, *adj.* unfriendly, hostile; as *noun* 2, *m.* rival, enemy (**in-amicus**).
inīquus, *adj.* unequal, uneven, unfair, disadvantageous (**in-aequus**).
inĭtium, 2, *n.* beginning.
iniūria, 1, *f.* harm, injury, wrong, injustice.
iniussu, *adv.* without order.
inlĭgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, bind on.
inŏpia, 1, *f.* want, scarcity.
inŏpīnans, *adj.* **-antis**, not expecting, surprised, off guard.
inquam, *v. defect.* **inquit**, say.
inrumpo, *v.n.* 3, **inrūpi**, **inruptum**, burst in, dash in.
insciens, *adj.* **-entis**, unaware.
inscĭus, *adj.* ignorant, unawares.
insĕquor, *v. dep.* 3, **insecūtus sum**, pursue, follow.
insĭdiae, 1, *f. plur.* ambush, treachery.
insĭnuo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, with **se**, work one's way into.
insisto, *v.n.* 3, **instĭti**, stand on, get firm foothold.
instăbĭlis, *adj.* unsteady, fickle.
instīgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, stir up, incite.
institŭo, *v.a.* 3, **institui**, **institūtum**, form, build, begin, set about.
institūtum, 2, *n.* custom, mode of life.
insto, *v.n.* 1, **instĭti**, press on.
instrūmentum, 2, *n.* furniture, stores.
instruo, *v.a.* 3, **instruxi**, **instructum**, draw up, equip.
insuēfactus, *adj.* accustomed, trained.
insuētus, *adj.* unaccustomed.
insŭla, 1, *f.* island.
insŭper, *adv.* above, on top.
intellĕgo, *v.a.* 3, **intellexi**, **intellectum**, perceive, learn, understand.
inter, *prep.* with *acc.* among, between.
intercēdo, *v.n.* 3, **intercessi**, **intercessum**, come between, intervene, pass.
intercĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **intercēpi**, **intercĕptum**, cut off, intercept (**intercapio**).
interdĭco, *v.a.* 3, **interdixi**, **interdictum**, forbid.
intĕrea, *adv.* meanwhile.
interfĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **interficere**, **interfēci**, **interfectum**, kill (**interfacio**).
intĕrim, *adv.* meanwhile.
intĕrimo, *v.a.* 3, **interēmi**, **interemptum**, kill, destroy (**interemo**).
intĕrior, *adj.* **-oris**, *comp.* of **intra**, inner, interior.
intĕrĭtus, 4, *m.* death.
intermitto, *v.a.* 3, **intermīsi**, **intermissum**, send between, let fall, stop, forego, interpose.
interpōno, *v.a.* 3, **interposui**, **interpositum**, interpose.
interpres, 3, *c.* **interprĕtis**, negotiator, interpreter.
intersum, *v.n. irreg.* **interesse**, **interfui**, be between, be present at, intervene, take part in; *impers.* **interest**, it interests.
intervallum, 2, *n.* space between, interval.
intra, *prep.* with *acc.* within.
introeo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **introire**, **introivi** or **-ii**, **introĭtum**, go within.
introĭtus, 4, *m.* entrance.
intrōmitto, *v.a.* 3, **intromīsi**, **intromissum**, bring within, introduce.
intrōrumpo, *v.n.* 3, **introrūpi**, **introruptum**, burst in.
intus, *adv.* within.
inūsĭtātus, *adj.* strange, unaccustomed.

inūtĭlis, *adj.* useless, worthless.
invĕnio, *v.a.* 4, **invēni, inventum**, find, discover.
invĕtĕrasco, *v.n.* **inveteravi**, grow old, become established.
invīto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, solicit, tempt, urge, invite.
invītus, *adj.* unwilling.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *pron.* self.
is, ea, id, *pron.* he, she, it, that.
ĭta, *adv.* so, thus.
ĭtăque, *adv.* and so, therefore.
ĭtem, *adv.* also.
ĭter, 3, *n.* **itĭnĕris**, journey, way, route, march.
iŭbeo, *v.a.* 2, **iussi, iussum**, order, bid.
iūdĭcium, 2, *n.* judgment, decision, opinion.
iūdĭco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, judge, deem.
iŭgum, 2, *n.* yoke.
iūmentum, 2, *n.* beast of burden, baggage animal.
iunctūra, 1, *f.* joining.
iungo, *v.a.* 3, **iunxi, iunctum**, join.
ius, 3, *n.* **iūris**, right, law, power.
iusiurandum, 2, *n.* **iurisiurandi** (both parts declined), oath.
iustus, *adj.* just.

L

Lăbor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, work, toil.
lăbor, *v. dep.* 3, **lapsus sum**, fail, slip, be disappointed in.
lăbōro, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, labour, toil.
labrum, 2, *n.* lip.
lac, 3, *n.* **lactis**, milk.
lăcesso, *v.a.* 3, **lacessīvi, lacessītum**, harass, provoke, attack.
laetĭtia, 1, *f.* joy.
languor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, weariness, listlessness.
lăpis, 3, *m.* **lapĭdis**, a stone.
lassĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, weariness, fatigue.
lāte, *adv.* widely, broadly.
lātĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, breadth.
lātus, *adj.* broad, wide.
lătus, 3, *n.* **latĕris**, side, flank.
laudo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, praise.
laus, 3, *f.* **laudis**, praise, glory.
lăvo, *v.a.* 1, **lāvi, lotum**, or **lautum**, or **lavātum**, wash.
lēgātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, embassy.
lēgātus, 2, *m.* envoy, ambassador, officer. See Intro. p. xxiii.
lĕgio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, legion. See Intro. p. xxii.
lĕgiōnārius, *adj.* belonging to a legion.
lēnis, *adj.* mild, gentle.
lēnĭter, *adv.* mildly, gently.
lĕpus, 3, *m.* **lepŏris**, hare.
lĕvis, *adj.* light, weak, fickle.
lĕvĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, lightness, weakness, fickleness.
lĕvo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, lighten, relieve.
lex, 3, *f.* **lēgis**, a law.
lĭbĕrālĭter, *adv.* generously.
lĭbĕri, 2, *m.* in *plur.* children.
lĭbĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, free.
lĭbertas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, liberty, freedom.
licet, *v. impers.* 2, **licuit**, it is allowed.
lignātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, collecting wood.
lignātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, wood-cutter.
lis, 3, *f.* **lĭtis**, strife, quarrel. See on Bk. v. ch. i. 24.
littĕra, 1, *f.* a letter (of the alphabet); in *plur.* a letter, despatch.
lĭtus, 3, *n.* **litŏris**, shore.
lŏcus, 2, *m. plur.* **loca**, place, spot, district.
longe, *adv.* far, by far.
longinquus, *adj.* distant, prolonged.
longĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, length.
longūrius, 2, *m.* long pole.
longus, *adj.* long, distant; **navis longa**, a man-of-war.
lŏquor, *v. dep.* 3, **locūtus sum**, speak, talk.

lōrīca, 1, *f.* breast-plate, breast-work.
lūna, 1, *f.* moon.
lux, 3, *f.* **lūcis**, light.

M

Măgis, *adv. comp.* of **magnopere**, more.
măgistrātus, 4, *m.* a magistracy, magistrate.
magnĭfĭcus, *adj.* grand, splendid.
magnĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, greatness, size, force.
magnōpere, *adv.* greatly, specially.
magnus, *adj.* great.
maior, *adj. comp.* of **magnus**, **-ōris**, greater; in *plur.* as *noun*, ancestors.
mando, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, entrust, commit.
māne, *adv.* in the morning.
măneo, *v.n.* 2, **mansi**, **mansum**, remain, stay.
mănus, 4, *f.* hand, band of men.
mare, 3, *n.* sea.
mărĭtĭmus, *adj.* belonging to the sea, maritime.
mātĕria, 1, *f.* timber.
mātūrus, *adj.* early.
maxĭme, *adv. superl.* of **magnopere**, chiefly, especially.
maxĭmus, *adj. superl.* of **magnus**, greatest.
mĕdeor, *v. dep.* 2, cure, remedy (with *dat.*)
mĕdĭocris, *adj.* moderate.
mĕdĭterrāneus, *adj.* inland.
mĕdius, *adj.* middle.
membrum, 2, *n.* limb.
mĕmŏria, 1, *f.* memory, tradition.
mensūra, 1, *f.* measurement.
mercātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, merchant.
mĕrĭdiānus, *adj.* at noon, midday.
mĕrĭdies, 5, *m.* midday, south.
mĕrĭtum, 2, *n.* service, good deed.
mĕto, *v.a.* 3, **messui**, **messum**, mow, reap.
mĕtus, 4, *m.* fear.
mĕus, *pron.* my.
mīles, 3, *m.* **mīlĭtis**, soldier.
mīlĭtāris, *adj.* belonging to a soldier, military.
mille, *adj. indecl.* a thousand; in *plur.* **milia**, *noun* 3, *n.*; **milia (passuum)**, a mile.
mĭnor, *adj. comp.* of **parvus**, **-ōris**, less.
mĭnuo, *v.a.* 3, **minui**, **minūtum**, lessen.
mĭnus, *adv. comp.* less.
mĭror, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, wonder, wonder at.
missus, 4, *m.* sending.
mitto, *v.a.* 3, **mīsi**, **missum**, send, hurl.
mōbĭlis, *adj.* changeable, fickle.
mōbĭlĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, nimbleness, activity.
mŏdĕror, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, guide, control.
mŏdŏ, *adv.* only, just. See on Bk. iv. chap. xvi. 20.
mŏdus, 2, *m.* limit, manner; in *adv.* as a *prep.* after the manner of.
mollis, *adj.* soft, shingly (of a beach).
mŏneo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui**, **-ĭtum**, advise, warn, remind.
mons, 3, *m.* **montis**, a mountain.
mŏra, 1, *f.* delay.
mŏror, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, delay.
mors, 3, *f.* **mortis**, death.
mos, 3, *m.* **mōris**, custom, habit; in *plur.* character.
mōtus, 4, *m.* movement, motion, rising, disturbance.
mŏveo, *v.a.* 2, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, move.
mŭlier, 3, *f.* **muliĕris**, woman.
multĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, multitude, mass, popular assembly.
multo, *adv.* by far.
multūm, *adv.* greatly, to a great extent.
multus, *adj.* much; in *plur.* many.

mūnio, *v.a.* 4, **-ivi** or **-ii**, **-itum**, fortify.
mūnītio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, fortification.
mūrālis, *adj.* belonging to a wall. See on Bk. v. chs. xl. 12, xlii. 10.

N

Nam, namque, *conj.* for.
nanciscor, *v. dep.* 3, **nactus** or **nanctus sum**, obtain, get, find.
nascor, *v. dep.* 3, **nātus sum**, be born.
nātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, tribe.
nātūra, 1, *f.* nature, character.
natus, 4, *m.* birth, age, only used in *abl. sing.*
nauta, 1, *m.* sailor.
nāvālis, *adj.* belonging to ships, naval.
nāvigātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, sailing, navigation.
nāvigium, 2, *n.* ship, boat.
nāvigo, *v.n* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, sail.
nāvis, 3, *f.* ship.
nē, *conj.* lest, in order that . . . not; **ne . . . quidem**, not even.
-nĕ, *interrog. particle* joined to first word of a direct or indirect question, whether.
nec, neque, *conj.* neither, nor.
nĕcessārio, *adv.* necessarily.
nĕcesse, *n. indecl.* with **est**, there is necessity, it is necessary; *adv.* necessarily. See on Bk. . . ch. v. 10.
nĕco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, kill.
neglĕgo, *v.a.* 3, **neglexi**, **neglectum**, omit, neglect, disregard.
nĕgo, *v.a.* and *n.* **-avi**, **-atum**, refuse, deny, say no.
nĕgōtium, 2, *n.* business, affair, task.
nēmo, *m.* **neminem** (for *gen.* and *abl.* **nullius, nullo** are used), no one.
nĕque. See **nec**.
neu, nēve=**et ne**, *conj.* and that not.
nihil, nil, *indecl. n.* nothing; **nihilo**, *adv.* by nothing, none the . . . (with comparatives).
nīsi, *conj.* if not, unless, except.
nōbilis, *adj.* of good birth, noble, renowned.
nōbilitas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, nobility.
nŏceo, *v.n.* 2, **-ui**, **-itum**, injure, hurt (with *dat.*)
noctu, *adv.* by night.
nocturnus, *adj.* belonging to night, nocturnal.
nōlo, *v.n. irreg.* **nolle, nolui**, be unwilling (**non, volo**).
nōmen, 3, *n.* **nomĭnis**, name, fame.
nōmĭnātim, *adv.* by name, personally.
non, *adv.* not.
nondum, *adv.* not yet.
nonnullus, *adj.* some.
nōnus, *ord. num.* ninth.
noster, nostra, nostrum, *possess. pron.* our. See on Bk. iv. chs. xii. 8, xxii. 4.
nŏvem, *card. num.* nine.
nŏvĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, newness, strangeness, novelty.
nŏvus, *adj.* new, fresh; **novae res**, revolution; **novissimus**, last.
nox, 3, *f.* **noctis**, night.
nūdo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, strip, lay bare, expose.
nullus, *adj.* **nullius**, no.
nŭmĕrus, 2, *m.* number.
nummus, 2, *m.* coin.
nunc, *adv.* now.
nunquam, *adv.* never.
nuntio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, announce.
nuntius, 2, *m.* messenger, message.
nūtus, 4, *m.* nod, sign.

O

Ob, *prep.* with *acc.* on account of.
ŏbeo, *v.a.* and *n.* 4, *irreg.* **obire, obivi** or **obii, obĭtum**, go to, meet.

ŏbĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **obicere, obiēci, obiectum**, put in the way, hinder (**ob-iacio**).
oblīque, *adv.* slantwise.
observo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, heed, observe, keep.
obses, 3, *c.* **obsĭdis**, hostage.
obsĭdeo, *v.a.* 2, **obsēdi, obsessum**, besiege, invest.
obsĭdio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, siege, investment.
obstĭnāte, *adv.* persistently.
obstrŭo, *v.a.* 3, **obstruxi, obstructum**, build up, barricade.
obtempĕro, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, obey, submit to (with *dat.*)
obtĭneo, *v.a.* 2, **obtinui, obtentum**, hold (**ob-teneo**).
occāsio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, chance, opportunity.
occāsus, 4, *m.* setting (of sun).
occĭdens, *adj.* **-entis**, setting; as *noun*, west.
occĭdo, *v.a.* 3, **occĭdi, occīsum**, kill (**ob-caedo**).
occĭdo, *v.n.* 3, **occĭdi, occāsum**, fall, die (**ob-cado**).
occŭlo, *v.a.* 3, **occului, occultum**, hide, conceal.
occulto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, hide, conceal *Freq.* of **occulo.**
occŭpo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, seize; in *pass.* be occupied in.
occurro, *v.n.* 3, **occurri, occursum**, meet, encounter (with *dat.*)
octāvus, *ord. num.* eighth.
octingenti, *card. num.* eight hundred.
octo, *card. num.* eight.
octōginta, *card. num.* eighty.
ŏcŭlus, 2, *m.* eye.
offĕro, *v.a. irreg.* **offerre, obtŭli, oblātum**, present; with **se**, meet (**ob-fero**).
offĭcium, 2, *n.* duty, service.
omnīno, *adv.* altogether (in *abl.*)
omnis, *adj.* all, every.
ōnĕrārius, *adj.* of burden; **naves on.** transports, merchantmen.
ŏnĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, burden, load.
ŏnus, 3, *n.* **onĕris**, burden, load.
ŏpĕra, care, attention.
ŏpĭnio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, belief, reputation, prestige.
ŏportet, *v. impers.* 2, **-uit**, it behoves.
opportūne, *adv.* happily, opportunely.
opportūnus, *adj.* suitable, fortunate, opportune.
opprĭmo, *v.a.* 3, **oppressi, oppressum**, surprise, overwhelm, crush.
oppugnātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, assault, siege.
oppugno, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, attack, assault, storm, besiege.
optĭmus, *adj. superl.* of **bonus**, best.
ŏpus, 3, *n.* **opĕris**, work.
ŏpus, *n. indecl.* need, necessity.
ōra, 1, *f.* coast, region.
ōrātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, speech, harangue.
ōrātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, spokesman, ambassador.
orbis, 3, *m.* circle, a military formation. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxxvii. 5.
ordo, 3, *m.* **ordĭnis**, rank, row.
ŏrior, *v. dep.* 4 (some forms of 3), **ortus sum**, arise, take rise.
ōro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, beg, entreat.
os, 3, *n.* **ōris**, mouth, face.
ostendo, *v.a.* 3, **ostendi, ostentum** or **ostensum**, show, make known.
ostento, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, display. *Freq.* of **ostendo.**
ŏvum, 2, *n.* egg.

P

Pābŭlātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, forager.
pābŭlor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, forage.
pāco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.* almost.

paenĭtet, *v. impers.* 2, **paenituit**, it repents: **me paenitet huius**, I repent of this.
pāgus, 2, *m.* canton, district.
pălam, *adv.* openly.
pălus, 3, *f.* **palūdis**, marsh, morass.
par, *adj.* **păris**, equal, fair.
parco, *v.n.* 3, **peperci**, **parsum** (rare), spare (with *dat.*)
părens, 3, *c.* **-entis**, parent.
păreo, *v.n.* 2, **-ui**, obey (with *dat.*)
părio, *v.a.* 3, **parere**, **pĕpĕri**, **partum**, bring forth, acquire.
păro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, make ready, prepare.
pars, 3, *f.* **partis**, part, share.
partim, *adv.* partly.
parvŭlus, *adj.* very small.
passim, *adv.* in all directions, everywhere.
passus, 4, *m.* a pace, step (about 5 ft.); **mille passuum**, a Roman mile (of 1618 yds.)
păteo, *v.n.* 2, **-ui**, lie open, stretch.
păter, 3, *m.* **patris**, father.
pătientia, 1, *f.* endurance.
pătior, *v. dep.* 3, **pati**, **passus sum**, suffer, allow.
paucĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, fewness.
paucus, *adj.* (mostly as *plur.*) few.
paulātim, *adv.* gradually.
paulisper, *adv.* for a short time.
paulo, *adv.* by a little, somewhat.
paulum, *adv.* a little, slightly.
pax, 3, *f.* **pācis**, peace.
pĕcūnia, 1, *f.* money.
pĕcus, 3, *n.* **pecŏris**, cattle.
pĕdes, 3, *m.* **peditis**, foot soldier; mostly in *plur.* infantry.
pĕdester, **-tris**, **-tre**, *adj.* on foot, on land.
pĕdĭtātus, 4, *m.* infantry.
pellis, 3, *f.* skin, hide.
pello, *v.a.* 3, **pĕpŭli**, **pulsum**, drive, rout.
pendo, *v.a.* 3, **pĕpendi**, **pensum**, weigh, pay.
per, *prep.* with *acc.* through, by means of, along.
pĕrăgo, *v.a.* 3, **perēgi**, **peractum**, complete, finish.
percĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **percipere**, **percēpi**, **perceptum**, perceive, consider.
percontātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, inquiry, question.
percurro, *v.n.* 3, **percurri**, **percursum**, run along.
percŭtio, *v.a.* 3, **percutere**, **percussi**, **percussum**, strike through, pierce through (**perquatio**).
perdisco, *v.a.* 3, **perdĭdĭci**, learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
perdūco, *v.a.* 3, **perduxi**, **perductum**, lead through.
pĕreo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **perire**, **perii**, **peritum**, perish.
pĕrendīnus, *adj.* (with **dies**), the day after to-morrow.
pĕrĕquito, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, drive through.
pĕrexiguus, *adj.* very small.
perfĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **perferre**, **pertŭli**, **perlātum**, bring through, bring, announce, endure.
perfĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **perficere**, **perfēci**, **perfectum**, perform, accomplish, finish.
perfĭdia, 1, *f.* treachery.
perfŭga, 1, *m.* deserter, refugee.
perfŭgio, *v.n.* 3, **perfugere**, **perfūgi**, flee, desert.
perfŭgium, 2, *n.* refuge.
pĕrĭcŭlum, 2, *n.* danger, dangerous attempt.
perlĕgo, *v.a.* 3, **perlēgi**, **perlectum**, read through.
permăneo, *v.n.* 2, **permansi**, **permansum**, remain, continue.
permitto, *v.a.* 3, **permīsi**, **permissum**, entrust, allow.
permŏveo, *v.a.* 2, **permōvi**, **permōtum**, alarm, disturb, influence.
permulceo, *v.a.* 2, **permulsi**, **permulsum**, soothe, calm.

perpaucus, *adj.* very few.
perpendĭcŭlum, 2, *n.* a plummet; **ad perpend.**, perpendicularly.
perpĕtuus, *adj.* continual; **in perpetuum**, for ever.
perrumpo, *v.a.* 3, **perrūpi**, **perruptum**, break through.
perscrībo, *v.a.* 3, **perscripsi**, **perscriptum**, write fully.
persĕquor, *v. dep.* 3, **persecūtus**, follow, pursue.
persĕvĕro, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, persist.
perspĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **perspicere**, **perspexi**, **perspectum**, examine, reconnoitre, observe.
persuādeo, *v.a.* 2, **persuasi**, **persuasum**, persuade of, persuade (with *acc.* of thing and *dat.* of person); **persuadeo hoc tibi**, I persuade you of this.
perterreo, *v.a.* 2, **perterrui**, **perterrĭtum**, alarm, scare.
pertĭmesco, *v.a.* and *n.* 3, **pertimui**, fear greatly.
pertĭnācia, 1, *f.* stubbornness, obstinacy.
pertĭneo, *v.n.* 2, **pertĭnui**, stretch, extend, belong, concern (**perteneo**).
perturbātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, confusion, panic.
perturbo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, disturb, harass, perplex.
pervĕnio, *v.n.* 4, **pervēni**, **perventum**, arrive at, reach.
pes, 3, *m.* pēd- foot.
pĕto, *v.a.* 3, p. ĭvi or **petii**, **petītum**, seek, ask, attack.
pĭĕtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, filial affection, patriotism.
pĭlum, 2, *n.* javelin.
pĭlus, a division of the legion (with **primus**). See Intro. p. xxiv., and on Bk. v. ch. xxxv. 13.
pinna, 1, *f.* battlement, palisade. See on Bk. v. ch. xl. 13.
piscis, 3, *m.* fish.
plăco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, appease.
plānus, *adj.* level.
plebs, 3, *f.* **plēbis**, the common people.
plēnus, *adj.* full.
plērique, *plur. adj.* most, for the most part.
plērumque, *adv.* generally.
plumbum, 2, *n.* lead; **plumbum album**, tin.
plus, *adj. comp.* of **multum**, **plūris**, more; in *plur.* several; also *adv.* more.
poena, 1, *f.* penalty, punishment.
pollĭceor, *v. dep.* 2, **pollĭcĭtus sum**, promise.
pondus, 3, *n.* **pondĕris**, weight.
pōno, *v.a.* 3, **pŏsui**, **positum**, place, appoint, pitch, lay aside.
pons, 3, *m.* **pontis**, bridge.
pŏpŭlor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, ravage, lay waste.
pŏpŭlus, 2, *m.* people.
porro, *adv.* moreover, further.
porta, 1, *f.* gate.
porto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, carry.
portus, 4, *m.* harbour.
posco, *v.a.* 3, **poposci**, demand, ask.
possessio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, possession, property.
possĭdo, *v.a.* 3, **possēdi**, **possessum**, get possession of, win.
possum, *v.n. irreg.* **posse**, **potui**, be able, have power.
post, *prep.* with *acc.* and *adv.* after, afterwards.
postea, *adv.* afterwards.
posteaquam, **postquam**, *rel. conj.* (**postea**, **post**, are generally separated from the **quam**), after that, when.
postĕrus, *adj.* next, following.
postpōno, *v.a.* 3, **postpŏsui**, **postpositum**, put behind, esteem less, put off.
postrēmo, *adv.* at last.
postrīdie, *adv.* on the next day.
postŭlo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, demand, require.
pŏtestas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, power, opportunity.

praeăcūtus, *adj.* sharpened at the point.

praeceps, *adj.* **praecĭpĭtis**, steep, headlong.

praeceptum, 2, *n.* order.

praecĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **praecĭpere**, **praecēpi**, **praeceptum**, command (**prae-capio**).

praecĭpito, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, throw headlong.

praecĭpuus, *adj.* chief, special.

praeclūdo, *v.a.* 3, **praeclūsi**, **praeclūsum**, block up, stop, hinder (**prae-claudo**).

praeco, 3, *m.* **-ōnis**, herald.

praeda, 1, *f.* booty, plunder.

praedĭco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, proclaim, publish.

praedor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, plunder.

praefectus, 2, *m.* an officer. See Intro. p. xviii.

praefĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **praeficere**, **praefēci**, **praefectum**, put over, put in command of (**prae-facio**).

praefĭgo, *v.a.* 3, **praefixi**, **praefixum**, fix in front.

praemitto, *v.a.* 3, **praemisi**, **praemissum**, send in front.

praemium, 2, *n.* reward.

praepăro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, prepare beforehand.

praescrĭbo, *v.a.* 3, **praescripsi**, **praescriptum**, direct, command.

praesens, *adj.* **-entis**, present.

praesentia, 1, *f.* presence; **in praesentia**, at hand, on the spot.

praesentio, *v.a.* 4, **praesensi**, **praesensum**, perceive beforehand.

praesertim, *adv.* especially.

praesĭdium, 2, *n.* defence, guard, garrison.

praesto, *adv.* at hand, ready.

praesto, *v.a.* 1, **praestĭti**, **praestĭtum**, display, perform; *impers.* it is better.

praesum, *v.n. irreg.* **praeesse**, **praefui**, be over, be in command of.

praeter, *prep.* with *acc.* beyond, besides, except.

praetĕrea, *adv.* besides, moreover.

praetermitto, *v.a.* 3, **praetermīsi**, **praetermissum**, let pass, let slip, lose.

praeuro, *v.a.* 3, **praeussi**, **praeustum**, burn at the point.

prĕcem, 3, *f.* (no *nom.*), prayer, entreaty.

prĕmo, *v.a.* 3, **pressi**, **pressum**, press, oppress, crush.

prĕtium, 2, *n.* price, cost.

prīdie, *adv.* on the day before.

prīmo, *adv.* at first, firstly.

prīmum, *adv.* at first.

prīmus, *adj. superl.* first.

princeps, *adj.* **princĭpis**, first, chief; as *noun*, a chief, prince.

princĭpātus, 4, *m.* chieftainship.

prĭor, *adj. comp.* **-ōris**, former, first (of two).

pristĭnus, *adj.* former, ancient, pristine.

prĭusquam (**prius** is often separated from **quam**), *rel. conj.* before that, until.

prīvātim, *adv.* privately.

prīvātus, *adj.* private.

pro, *prep.* with *abl.* in front of, before, instead of, as.

prōbo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, prove, show, approve of.

prōcēdo, *v.n.* 3, **processi**, **processum**, advance.

prōcul, *adv.* at a distance, afar off.

prōcumbo, *v.n.* 3, **procŭbui**, **procŭbĭtum**, lean forward.

prōcurro, *v.n.* 3, **procurri**, **procursum**, run forward, advance.

prōdeo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **prodire**, **prodivi** or **prodii**, **prodĭtum**, go forward, go forth.

prōdo, *v.a.* 3, **prodĭdi**, **prodĭtum**, hand down, betray.

prōdūco, *v.a.* 3, **produxi**, **productum**, lead forward, prolong.

proelior, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, fight.
proelium, 2, *n.* fight.
prŏfectio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, departure, start.
prŏfĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **proficere, profēci, profectum**, accomplish.
prŏfĭciscor, *v. dep.* 3, **profectus sum**, set out, start.
prŏfĭteor, *v. dep.* 2, **professus sum**, promise.
prŏflŭo, *v.n.* 3, **profluxi, profluxum**, flow forth, issue.
prŏfŭgio, *v.n.* 3, **profugere, profūgi**, run away.
prŏgrĕdior, *v. dep.* 3, **progressus sum**, advance (**pro-gradior**).
prŏhĭbeo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui, -ĭtum**, prevent, hinder (**pro-habeo**).
prŏĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **proicere, proiēci, proiectum**, throw forward (**pro-iacio**).
prŏinde, *adv.* therefore.
prŏmissus, *adj.* long.
prŏne, *adv.* sloping.
prŏnuntio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, declare, proclaim.
prŏpe, *prep.* with *acc.* near; *adv.* nearly.
prŏpello, *v.a.* 3, **propŭli, propulsum**, drive forwards, drive away.
prŏpinquus, *adj.* near, neighbouring; as *noun*, kinsman.
prŏpius, *comp.* of **prope**, *prep.* with *acc.* nearer to; *adv.* nearer.
prŏpōno, *v.a.* 3, **propōsui, propŏsĭtum**, set before, offer, represent.
propter, *prep.* with *acc.* on account of.
proptĕrea, *adv.* therefore; with **quam**, because, for this reason that.
prŏpugno, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, fight in front, rush forward to fight.
prŏsĕquor, *v. dep.* 3, **prosecūtus sum**, follow, pursue.
prospectus, 4, *m.* sight.
prospĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **prospicere, prospexi, prospectum**, see ahead, take care.
prŏtĕgo, *v.a.* 3, **protexi, protectum**, guard, protect.
proterreo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui, -ĭtum**, frighten away.
prŏtĭnus, *adv.* forthwith.
prŏvĕho, *v.a.* 3, **provexi, provectum**, carry forward; in *pass.* put out to sea.
prŏvĕnio, *v.n.* 4, **provēni, proventum**, come forth, grow.
prŏvĭdeo, *v.a.* 2, **providi, provīsum**, make provision for, care for.
prōvincia, 1, *f.* province.
proxĭme, *adv. superl.* of **prope**, most recently.
proxĭmus, *adj. superl.* of **prope**, nearest, next.
pūbes, *adj.* **pubĕris**, adult.
publĭce, *adv.* publicly, as a nation.
publĭco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, confiscate.
pŭer, 2, *m.* boy; **a pueris**, from boyhood.
pugna, 1, *f.* fight, battle.
pugno, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, fight.
pulvis, 3, *m.* **pulvĕris**, dust.
purgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, excuse, exculpate.
pŭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, think, consider, deem.

Q

Qua, *rel.* and *interrog. adv.* by which way, where.
quădrāgēni, *dist. num.* forty each.
quădrāginta, *card. num.* forty.
quadringenti, *card. num.* four hundred.
quaero, *v.a.* 3, **quaesīvi, quaesītum**, seek, ask.
quaestor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, quæstor. See Intro. p. xxiii.
quam, *adv.* and *conj.* how, as, than; with *superl.* as . . . as

possible—*e.g.*, **quam celerrime**, as quickly as possible.

quamvis, *adv.* and *rel. conj.* however, although.

quanto, *adv.* by how much; **quanto . . . tanto**, with *comp.* the . . . the.

quantum, *adv.* how much, as much as, as far as.

quantus, *rel.* or *interrog. adj.* how great, as great as, as much as.

quantusvis, quantavis, quantumvis, *adj.* as great as you please, however great.

quāre, *adv.* wherefore.

quartus, *ord. num.* fourth.

quattuor, *card. num.* four.

-quĕ, *conj.* and; **que . . . que**, both . . . and.

quĕror, *v. dep.* 3, **questus sum**, complain.

qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron.* who, which. See Ap. II.

quĭcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *rel. pron.* whoever, whatever.

quid? *interrog. adv.* why?

quĭdam, quaedam, quoddam, *pron.* a certain.

quĭdem, *adv.* indeed; **ne . . . quidem**, not even.

quĭes, 3, *f.* **quiētis**, rest, quiet.

quĭētus, *adj.* quiet, calm, peaceful.

quin, *adv.* nay more. See on Bk. iv. ch. ii. 3; *rel. conj.* but that, from. See on Bk. iv. ch. vii. 5, and App. II.

quintus, *ord. num.* fifth.

quindĕcim, *card. num.* fifteen.

quingenti, *card. num.* five hundred.

quinquāginta, *card. num.* fifty.

quinque, *card. num.* five.

quis, quid, *interrog. pron.* who? what? *indef.* **quae** or **qua, quid**, any, with **ne, si**. Both *interrog.* and *indef.* have forms **qui, quod**, when in agreement with nouns.

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, *pron.* some one, any one.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or **quicquam**, any (like **ullus**, only used with negatives or their equivalents). See on Bk. iv. ch. ii. 2.

quisque, quaeque, quidque, or in agreement with *noun*, **quodque**, *pron.* each, every.

quĭvis, quaevis, quidvis, or in agreement with *noun*, **quodvis**, *pron.* any you please.

quo, *rel. conj.* or *interrog. adv.* whither; with *comp.* and *subj.* in order that; **quo . . . eo**, with *comp.* and *indic.* the . . . the.

quoad, *rel. conj.* as far as, until.

quod, *rel. conj.* because, the fact that.

quōmĭnus, *rel. conj.* by which the less, from; with *subj.* after verb of hindering.

quŏniam, *rel. conj.* since, because.

quŏque, *conj.* also.

quŏtannis or **quot annis**, *adv.* each year. See on Bk. iv. ch. i. 9.

quŏties, *rel. conj.* as often as.

R

Rādo, *v.a.* 3, **rāsi, rāsum**, shave, scrape.

răpĭdĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, swiftness.

rārus, *adj.* at small intervals, in small bodies, rare.

rătio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, manner, method, plan, science; **habere rationem**, have regard to.

rĕbellio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, renewal of war.

rĕcēdo, *v.n.* 3, **recessi, recessum**, retreat.

rĕcens, *adj.* **-entis**, late, recent, fresh, new.

rĕceptus, 4, *m.* retreat, means of retreat.

rĕcĭpio, *v.a.* 3, **recēpi, receptum**, take back; **se recipere**, retreat.

rĕcĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, read out.
rĕcŭpĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, recover.
rĕcūso, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, refuse, object to, shrink from.
rĕdeo, *v.n.* 4, *irreg.* **redire, redii** or **redivi, reditum**, return.
rĕdĭgo, *v.a.* 3, **redēgi, redactum**, bring back, bring to, reduce (**red** (**re**), **ago**).
rĕdĭtus, 4, *m.* return.
rĕdūco, *v.a.* 3, **reduxi, reductum**, lead back, withdraw.
rĕfĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **referre, rettŭli, relātum**, bring back, draw back, repay; **referre pedem**, retreat.
rĕfĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **reficere, refēci, refectum**, repair (**re-facio**).
rĕfŭgio, *v.n.* 3, **refūgi**, flee back.
rēgio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, district, spot, country.
regno, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, reign.
regnum, 2, *n.* kingdom, sovereignty.
rĕĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **reiēci, reiectum**, drive back, repulse (**re-iacio**).
rĕlēgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, send away, remove.
rĕligio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, religious scruple.
rĕlinquo, *v.a.* 3, **relīqui, relictum**, leave behind, abandon.
rĕlīquus, *adj.* remaining, additional, rest.
rĕmăneo, *v.n.* 2, **remansi, remansum**, remain behind, remain.
rĕmĭgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, row.
rĕmigro, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, retire.
rĕmissus, *adj.* slack, mild.
rĕmitto, *v.a.* 3, **remīsi, remissum**, send back, let go.
rĕmollesco, *v.n.* 3, become soft, become enervated.
rĕmŏveo, *v.a.* 2, **remōvi, remōtum**, move back, draw away.
rēmus, 2, *m.* oar.
rĕnuntio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, bring back news, report.
rĕpello, *v.a.* 3, **reppŭli, repulsum**, drive back.
rĕpente, *adv.* suddenly.
rĕpentīnus, *adj.* sudden.
rĕpĕrio, *v.a.* 4, **repperi, repertum**, find, discover.
rĕpĕto, *v.a.* 3, **repetīvi** or **repetii, repetītum**, seek again, reseek.
rĕporto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, carry back, bring back; **victoriam reportare**, win a victory.
rĕposco, *v.a.* 3, demand back, claim, exact.
rĕprĕhendo, *v.a.* 3, **reprehendi, reprehensum**, blame.
res, 5, *f.* thing, affair. See on Bk. iv. ch. i. 16.
rescindo, *v.a.* 3, **rescīdi, recissum**, cut down, break down.
rĕservo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, keep back.
rĕsisto, *v.n.* 3, **restĭti, restĭtum**, stand one's ground, resist (with *dat.*)
respĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **respicere, respexi, respectum**, look back, have regard to.
respondeo, *v.a.* 2, **respondi, responsum**, answer (with *acc.* of thing answered and *dat.* of person).
responsum, 2, *n.* answer, reply.
respublĭca, 5, *f.* **reipublicae** (both parts declined), the state.
restĭtuo, *v.a.* 3, **restitui, restitūtum**, restore (**re-statuo**).
rĕtĭneo, *v.a.* 2, **retinui, retentum**, hold back, retain (**re-teneo**).
retrăho, *v.a.* 3, **retraxi, retractum**, draw back, drag back.
rĕverto, *v.n.* 3, **reverti, reversum** turn back, return; also *dep.* **revertor**. See on Bk. iv. ch. iv. 12.
rĕvincio, *v.a.* 4, **revinxi, revinctum**, bind back, fasten, secure.
rĕvŏco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, call back.
rex, 3, *m.* **rēgis**, king.

rīpa, 1, *f.* bank.
rīvus, 2, *m.* river.
rŏgo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, ask.
rōta, 1, *f.* wheel.
rūmor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, report, rumour.
rursus, *adv.* back, again.

S

Saepe, *adv.* often.
săgitta, 1, *f.* arrow.
săgŭlum, 2, *n.* military cloak.
sălūs, 3, *f.* **salūtis**, safety.
sānus, *adj.* reasonable, sane.
săpio, *v.n.* 3, **sapere, sapīvi** or **sapii**, be wise, have sense.
sātis, *adv.* enough, quite, fairly; *adj. indecl.* sufficient.
sātisfăcio, *v.n.* 3, **satisfēci, satisfactum**, give satisfaction, satisfy, make amends (with *dat.*) Often written **satis facio**.
saucius, *adj.* wounded.
scālae, 1, *f. plur.* scaling-ladders.
scăpha, 1, *f.* skiff, boat.
scindo, *v.a.* 3, **scīdi, scissum**, rend, tear in pieces.
scio, *v.a.* 4, **scīvi, scītum**, know.
scrībo, *v.a.* 3, **scripsi, scriptum**, write.
scūtum, 2, *n.* shield.
se, sese, *reflex. pron. sing.* and *plur.* (all genders), **sui, sibi**, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
sēcius, *adv. comp.* of **secus**, otherwise, less.
sĕcundum, *prep.* with *acc.* in accordance with, along.
sĕcundus, *adj.* second, favourable.
sed, *conj.* but.
sēdes, 3, *f.* seat, abode, settlement.
sēmīta, 1, *f.* path.
sĕnātus, 4, *m.* senate.
sententia, 1, *f.* opinion.
sentio, *v.a.* 4, **sensi, sensum**, perceive, feel.
sēpărātus, *adj.* apart, distinct, separate.
septem, *card. num.* seven.
septentriōnes, 3, *m. plur.* the seven stars of the Great Bear, the north.
septīmus, *ord. num.* seventh.
sĕquor, *v. dep.* 3, **secūtus sum**, follow, pursue; **fidem sequi**, seek the protection of.
sermo, 3, *m.* **-ōnis**, conversation, talk.
sēro, *adv.* late, too late.
sĕro, *v.a.* 3, **sēvi, sătum**, sow.
servio, *v.n.* 4, **-ivi, -ītum**, be slave of, serve (with *dat.*)
servītūs, 3, *f.* **servitūtis**, slavery.
servo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, keep, preserve.
servus, 2, *m.* slave.
sesquipēdālis, *adj.* of a foot and a half.
sētius. See **secius.**
seu, sīve, *rel. conj.* either if, or if, whether; **seu (sive)** . . . **seu (sive)**, whether . . . or.
sēvŏco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, call apart, call aside.
sex, *card. num.* six.
sexcenti, *card. num.* six hundred.
si, *rel. conj.* if.
sic, *adv.* thus.
siccĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, dryness, drought.
sĭcut, sĭcŭti, *rel. conj.* just as, so as.
significātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, intelligence.
significo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, show, express.
signum, 2, *n.* sign, signal, standard.
silva, 1, *f.* wood.
silvestris, *adj.* woody.
sīmilis, *adj.* like.
sīmul, *adv.* at the same time; **simul ac, simul atque (simulac, simulatque)**, at the same time as.
sīmŭlātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, pretence, artifice.

sĭmŭlo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -ātum**, pretend. See on Bk. iv. chs. iv. 11, vi. 9.
sĭmultas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, rivalry, jealousy.
sin, *rel. conj.* but if.
sine, *prep.* with *abl.* without.
singillātim, *adv.* singly, one by one.
singŭlāris, *adj.* single, individual, remarkable.
singŭli, *dist. num.* one each.
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *adj.* on the left hand.
sinistra, 1, *f.* left hand.
sino, *v.a.* 3, **sīvi, sītum**, allow, permit.
sītus, 4, *m.* situation.
sŏcius, 2, *m.* ally.
sol, 3, *m.* **sōlis**, sun.
sŏleo, *v.n.* 2, **sollĭtus sum**, be wont, be accustomed.
sōlĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, desert.
sōllĭcĭto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, tempt, tamper with.
sōllĭcĭtūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, anxiety.
sōllĭcĭtus, *adj.* anxious, disturbed.
sōlus, sollus, *adj.* alone, only.
solvo, *v.a.* 3, **solvi, solūtum**, loose; with or without **naves**, set sail.
spătium, 2, *n.* space, distance, interval.
spĕcies, 5, *f.* appearance, shape.
spĕcŭlātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, spy.
spĕcŭlātōrius, *adj.* with **navigia**, spy-boats.
spēro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, hope for, hope.
spes, 5, *f.* hope.
spŏlio, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, strip off, rob, despoil.
sponte, *abl.* of obsolete word **spons**, used as *adv.* voluntarily; **sponte sua**, of his (their) own accord.
stătim, *adv.* immediately.
stătio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, guard, outpost, picket.
stătuo, *v.a.* 3, **statui, statūtum**, place, fix, determine.
stătus, 4, *m.* position, circumstances.
stĭpendium, 2, *n.* soldier's pay, tribute.
sto, *v.n.* 1, **stĕti, stătum**, stand.
strāmentum, 2, *n.* straw, thatch.
strĕpĭtus, 4, *m.* noise, din.
stŭdeo, *v.n.* 2, **-ui**, be eager for, devote oneself to (with *dat.*)
stŭdium, 2, *n.* zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm.
sub, *prep.* with *acc.* of motion (*abl.* of rest), under, near, close upon, close up to.
subdūco, *v.a.* 3, **subduxi, subductum**, haul up, beach.
subductio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, hauling ashore, beaching.
subfŏdio, *v.a.* 3, **subfodere, subfōdi, subfossum**, stab underneath.
subĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **subicere, subiēci, subiectum**, place beneath, expose (**sub-iacio**).
sŭbĭto, *adv.* suddenly.
sublātus, *part. pass.* of **tollo**.
sublĭca, 1, *f.* pile.
subministro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, supply.
submitto, *v.a.* 3, **submisi, submissum**, send to aid of.
submŏveo, *v.a.* 2, **submōvi, submōtum**, remove, keep back.
subsĕquor, *v. dep.* 3, **subsecūtus sum**, follow close up.
subsĭdium, 2, *n.* assistance, reinforcement, resource.
subsisto, *v.n.* 3, **substĭti**, hold out, stand firm.
subsum, *v.n. irreg.*, **subesse, subfui**, be close at hand.
subvĕnio, *v.n.* 4, **subvēni, subventum**, come to aid of, succour (with *dat.*)
succēdo, *v.n.* 3, **successi, successum**, come close up, come into the place of, succeed (with *dat.*)
succīdo, *v.a.* 3, **succīdi, succīsum**, cut down, (**sub-caedo**).
succurro, *v.n.* 3, **succurri, succur-**

sum, hasten to the aid of, help (with *dat.*)
sŭdes, 3, *f.* stake.
sum, *v.n. irreg.* **esse, fui**, be.
summa, 1, *f.* whole, chief point.
summus, *adj. superl.* of **superus**, highest, top, most important, greatest.
sŭpĕrior, *adj. comp.* of **superus, -ōris**, higher, former.
sŭpĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, overcome, subdue.
supplĭcātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, public thanksgiving. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxxviii. 13.
supplĭcium, 2, *n.* punishment.
supra, *prep.* with *acc.* above; *adv.* before, above.
suspĭcio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, hint, suspicion.
suspĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **suspexi, suspectum**, suspect.
suspĭcor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, suspect, surmise.
sustento, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, support.
sustĭneo, *v.a.* 2, **sustĭnui, sustentum**, hold in check, withstand, hold one's ground.
sŭus, *pron. reflex.* his (her, their) own; *n. plur.* his (her, their) own property.

T

Tālea, 1, *f.* bar.
tālis, *adj.* such, of such a kind.
tam, *adv.* so.
tămen, *adv.* however, nevertheless, still.
tămetsi, *rel. conj.* although.
tandem, *adv.* at length.
tantŭlus, *adj.* so small.
tantum, *adv.* so much, only.
tantus, *adj.* so great, so much.
tardius, *adv. comp.* of **tarde**, more slowly.
tĕgo, *v.a.* 3, **texi, tectum**, cover, hide.
tēlum, 2, *n.* weapon, missile.
tĕmĕre, *adv.* rashly, at random.
tĕmĕrĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, rashness.
tĕmo, 3, *m.* **-ōnis**, pole (of chariot).
tempestas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, weather, storm.
tempus, 3, *n.* **tempŏris**, time, season, crisis, emergency.
tĕneo, *v.a.* 2, **tenui, tentum**, hold, keep, check, keep back.
tento, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, try, attempt. *Freq.* of **teneo**.
tĕnuis, *adj.* weak.
tergum, 2, *n.* back.
terra, 1, *f.* land, earth.
terreo, *v.a.* 2, **-ui, -ĭtum**, frighten, terrify.
terrĭto, *v.a.* 1, frighten, terrify. *Freq.* of **terreo**.
terror, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, alarm, dread.
tertius, *ord. num.* third.
testĭmōnium, 2, *n.* evidence.
testūdo, 3, *f.* **-ĭnis**, tortoise, testudo, a military device. See on Bk. v. chs. ix. 16, xlii. 10, and illustrations.
tignum, 2, *n.* beam, pile.
tĭmeo, *v.a.* and *n.* 2, **-ui**, fear, dread, fear for (in this sense with *dat.*)
tĭmĭde, *adv.* timidly.
tĭmor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, fear, dread.
tŏlĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, bear, endure.
tollo, *v.a.* 3, **sustŭli, sublātum**, lift up, raise, remove, weigh (anchor), take in hand.
tormentum, 2, *n.* engine of war. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxv. 5, and illustrations on p. 96.
torreo, *v.a.* 2, **torrui, tostum**, scorch.
tot, *adj. indecl.* so many, as many.
tōtus, *adj.* **totius**, whole, all.
trabs, 3, *f.* **trăbis**, beam.
trādo, *v.a.* 3, **tradĭdi, tradĭtum**, hand over, hand down.
tradūco, *v.a.* 3, **traduxi, traductum**, lead across, convey across (**trans-duco**).
trăgŭla, 1, *f.* Gallic javelin, lance.
trăiectus, 4, *m.* crossing, passage.

trāĭcio, *v.a.* 3, **traicere, traiēci, traiectum**, pierce through, transfix (**trans-iacio**).
tranquillĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, calm.
trans, *prep.* with *acc.* across, on the far side of.
transeo, *v.a.* and *n.* 4, *irreg.* **transivi** or **transii, transĭtum**, cross.
transfĕro, *v.a.* 3, *irreg.* **transferre, transtŭli, translātum**, bear across, carry over.
transfĭgo, *v.a.* 3, **transfixi, transfixum**, pierce through, transfix.
transĭtus, 4, *m.* crossing, passage.
transmārīnus, *adj.* from across the sea, imported.
transmissus, 4, *m.* crossing.
transporto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, convey across.
Transrhēnānus, *adj.* living across the Rhine.
trĕcenti, *card. num.* three hundred.
trĕpĭdo, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, be in a panic, be in a hurry.
tres, *card. num.* **trium**, three.
trĭbūnus, 2, *m.* officer, tribune. See Intro. p. xxiii.
trĭbuo, *v.a.* 3, **tribui, tribūtum**, assign, pay.
trĭbūtum, 2, *n.* payment, tribute.
trĭduum, 2, *n.* space of three days.
trĭennium, 2, *n.* space of three years.
trīni, *dist. num.* three each.
trĭpertĭto, *adv.* in three divisions.
triplex, *adj.* **triplĭcis**, threefold.
trĭquetrus, *adj.* triangular.
truncus, 2, *m.* trunk.
tueor, *v. dep.* 2, **tuĭtus sum**, guard, defend.
tum, *adv.* then, at that time.
tŭmultus, 4, *m.* disturbance, confusion, rising.
tŭmŭlus, 2, *m.* a mound.
turma, 1, *f.* squadron of cavalry. See Intro. p. xxii.
turpis, *adj.* disgraceful, base.
turris, 3, *f.* tower.
tūtus, *adj.* safe.

U

Ŭbi, *interrog. adv.* or *rel. conj.* where, when.
ulciscor, *v. dep.* 3, **ultus sum**, take vengeance on.
ullus, *adj.* **ullius**, any (after a negative or equivalent of a negative).
ultĕrior, *adj. comp.* **-ōris**, farther.
ultĭmus, *adj. superl.* farthest, most distant, last.
ultro, *adv.* moreover, of one's own accord.
ŭlŭlātus, 4, *m.* yell, war-cry.
ūnā, *adv.* together.
unde, *interrog. adv.* or *rel. conj.* whence.
undĕcĭmus, *ord. num.* eleventh.
undĭque, *adv.* from all parts, on all sides.
ūnĭversus, *adj.* all together, all, the whole.
ūnus, unĭus, *card. num.* one, alone.
usque, *adv.* continuously; with **ad**, right up to.
ūsus, 4, *m.* use, advantage, experience.
ut, ŭti, *rel. conj.* so that, in order that, as. See App. II.
ŭter, utra, utrum, utrĭus, *rel.* and *interrog. pron.* which of two.
ŭterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.* each of two.
ūtilis, *adj.* useful.
utĭlĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, expediency.
ūtor, *v. dep.* 3, **usus sum**, use, enjoy (with *abl.*)
utrimque, *adv.* on both sides.
uxor, 3, *f.* **-ōris**, wife.

V

Văcātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, exception, freedom from service.
văco, *v.n.* 1, **-avi, -atum**, lie waste.
vădum, 2, *n.* shallow, ford.
văgīna, 1, *f.* sheath.

vāgor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, wander.
vāleo, *v.n.* 2, **-ui**, **-ĭtum**, be strong, have power.
valles, 3, *f.* valley.
vallum, 2, *n.* rampart.
vārĭĕtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, variety, diversity.
vasto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, lay waste, devastate.
vectīga[1], 3, *n.* **vectigālis**, tax.
vectīgālis, *adj.* tributary.
vectōrius, *adj.* for transport.
vel, *conj.* either, or.
vēlōcĭtas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, swiftness.
vēlōcĭter, *adv.* swiftly.
vēnātio, 3, *f.* **-ōnis**, hunting, chase.
vēnātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, hunter.
vendo, *v.a.* 3, **vendĭdi**, **venditum**, sell.
vĕnio, *v.n.* 4, **vēni**, **ventum**, come.
ventĭto, *v.n.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, come often, go to and fro. *Freq.* of **venio**.
ventus, 2, *m.* wind.
verbum, 2, *n.* word.
vĕreor, *v. dep.* 2, **-itus sum**, fear.
vergo, *v.n.* 3, **versi**, incline, turn, lie towards.
vĕro, *adv.* truly, but indeed.
verso, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, treat, deal alternately with.
versor, *v. dep.* 1, **-atus sum**, be among, go among.
vērus, *adj.* true.
vērūtum, 2, *n.* javelin.
vesper, 2 and 3, *m.* **vesperi** and **vesperis**, evening.
vestīgium, 2, *n.* footprint, trace, spot.
vestio, *v.a.* 4, **-ivi** or **-ii**, **-ītum**, clothe.
vestītus, 4, *m.* clothing.
vĕto, *v.a.* 1, **vetui**, **vetĭtum**, forbid.
vĕtus, *adj.* **vetĕris**, old.
vexo, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, harass.
via, 1, *f.* way, road, journey.
viātor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, traveller.
vĭcem, 3, *f.* (no *nom.*), turn; **in vicem**, in turn.
vĭcēni, *dist. num.* twenty each.
vĭcies, **viciens**, *num. adv.* twenty times.
victor, 3, *m.* **-ōris**, conqueror; *adj.* victorious.
victōria, 1, *f.* victory.
vĭcus, 2, *m.* village.
vĭdeo, *v.a.* 2, **vīdi**, **vīsum**, see; *pass.* seem; *impers.* **visum est**, it seemed good.
vigĭlia, 1, *f.* watch, wakefulness. See on Bk. iv. ch. xxiii. 2.
vīginti, *card. num. indecl.* twenty.
vinco, *v.a.* 3, **vīci**, **victum**, conquer, prevail.
vincŭlum, 2, *n.* chain.
vīnum, 2, *n.* wine.
vir, 2, *m.* a man.
virgo, 3, *f.* **virgĭnis**, virgin.
virtus, 3, *f.* **virtūtis**, manliness, courage, valour, merit.
vis, 3, *f.* force, violence, might; *plur.* **vīres**, strength.
vīta, 1, *f.* life.
vīto, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, avoid.
vitrum, 2, *n.* woad.
vīvo, *v.n.* 3, **vixi**, **victum**, live, subsist.
vix, *adv.* scarcely.
vŏco, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, call, summon.
vŏlo, *v.n.* 3, *irreg.* **velle**, **volui**, wish, be willing.
vŏluntas, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, will, wish, goodwill.
vŏluptās, 3, *f.* **-ātis**, pleasure.
vox, 3, *f.* **vōcis**, voice.
vulgo, *adv.* commonly.
vulgus, 2, *n.* common people.
vulnĕro, *v.a.* 1, **-avi**, **-atum**, wound.
vulnus, 3, *n.* **vulnĕris**, wound; in *plur.* casualties.

INTERNATIONAL EDUCATION SERIES.

12mo, cloth, uniform binding.

THE INTERNATIONAL EDUCATION SERIES was projected for the purpose of bringing together in orderly arrangement the best writings, new and old, upon educational subjects, and presenting a complete course of reading and training for teachers generally. It is edited by WILLIAM T. HARRIS, LL.D., United States Commissioner of Education, who has contributed for the different volumes in the way of introduction, analysis, and commentary. The volumes are tastefully and substantially bound in uniform style.

VOLUMES NOW READY.

1. THE PHILOSOPHY OF EDUCATION. By JOHANN K. F. ROSENKRANZ, Doctor of Theology and Professor of Philosophy, University of Konigsberg. Translated by ANNA C. BRACKETT. Second edition, revised, with Commentary and complete analysis. $1.50.
2. A HISTORY OF EDUCATION. By F. V. N. PAINTER, A.M., Professor of Modern Languages and Literature, Roanoke College, Va. $1.50.
3. THE RISE AND EARLY CONSTITUTION OF UNIVERSITIES. WITH A SURVEY OF MEDIÆVAL EDUCATION. By S. S. LAURIE, LL.D., Professor of the Institutes and History of Education, University of Edinburgh. $1.50.
4. THE VENTILATION AND WARMING OF SCHOOL BUILDINGS. By GILBERT B. MORRISON, Teacher of Physics and Chemistry, Kansas City High School. $1.00.
5. THE EDUCATION OF MAN. By FRIEDRICH FROEBEL. Translated and annotated by W. N. HAILMANN, A.M., Superintendent of Public Schools, La Porte, Ind. $1.50.
6. ELEMENTARY PSYCHOLOGY AND EDUCATION. By JOSEPH BALDWIN, A.M., LL.D., author of "The Art of School Management." $1.50.
7. THE SENSES AND THE WILL. (Part I of "THE MIND OF THE CHILD.") By W. PREYER, Professor of Physiology in Jena. Translated by H. W. BROWN, Teacher in the State Normal School at Worcester, Mass. $1.50.
8. MEMORY: WHAT IT IS AND HOW TO IMPROVE IT. By DAVID KAY, F.R. G.S., author of "Education and Educators," etc. $1.50.
9. THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE INTELLECT. (Part II. of "THE MIND OF THE CHILD.") By W. PREYER, Professor of Physiology in Jena. Translated by H. W. BROWN. $1.50.
10. HOW TO STUDY GEOGRAPHY. A practical exposition of Methods and Devices in Teaching Geography which apply the Principles and Plans of Ritter and Guyot By FRANCIS W. PARKER, Principal of the Cook County (Illinois) Normal School. $1.50.
11. EDUCATION IN THE UNITED STATES. ITS HISTORY FROM THE EARLIEST SETTLEMENTS. By RICHARD G. BOONE, A.M., Professor of Pedagogy, Indiana University. $1.50.
12. EUROPEAN SCHOOLS: OR, WHAT I SAW IN THE SCHOOLS OF GERMANY, FRANCE, AUSTRIA, AND SWITZERLAND. By L. R. KLEMM, Ph.D., Principal of the Cincinnati Technical School. Fully Illustrated. $2.00.
13. PRACTICAL HINTS FOR THE TEACHERS OF PUBLIC SCHOOLS. By GEORGE HOWLAND, Superintendent of the Chicago Public Schools. $1.00.
14. PESTALOZZI. HIS LIFE AND WORK. By ROGER DE GUIMPS. Authorized Translation from the second French edition, by J. RUSSELL, B.A. With an Introduction by Rev. R. H. QUICK, M.A. $1.50.
15. SCHOOL SUPERVISION. By J. L. PICKARD, LL.D. $1.00.
16. HIGHER EDUCATION OF WOMEN IN EUROPE. By HELENE LANGE, Berlin. Translated and accompanied by comparative statistics by L. R. KLEMM. $1.00.
17. ESSAYS ON EDUCATIONAL REFORMERS. By ROBERT HERBERT QUICK, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. Only Authorized edition of the work as rewritten in 1890. $1.50.

18. A TEXT-BOOK IN PSYCHOLOGY. By JOHANN FRIEDRICH HERBART. Translated by MARGARET K. SMITH. $1.00
19. PSYCHOLOGY APPLIED TO THE ART OF TEACHING. By JOSEPH BALDWIN, A.M., LL.D. $1.50.
20. ROUSSEAU'S EMILE: OR, TREATISE ON EDUCATION. Translated and annotated by W. H. PAYNE, Ph.D., LL.D., Chancellor of the University of Nashville. $1.50.
21. THE MORAL INSTRUCTION OF CHILDREN. By FELIX ADLER. $1.50.
22. ENGLISH EDUCATION IN THE ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS. By ISAAC SHARPLESS, LL.D., President of Haverford College. $1.00.
23. EDUCATION FROM A NATIONAL STANDPOINT. By ALFRED FOUILLEE. $1.50.
24. MENTAL DEVELOPMENT IN THE CHILD. By W. PREYER, Professor of Physiology in Jena. Translated by H. W. Brown. $1.00.
25. HOW TO STUDY AND TEACH HISTORY. By B. A. HINSDALE, Ph.D., LL.D., University of Michigan. $1.50.
26. SYMBOLIC EDUCATION: A COMMENTARY ON FROEBEL'S "MOTHER PLAY." By SUSAN E. BLOW. $1.50.
27. SYSTEMATIC SCIENCE TEACHING. By EDWARD GARDINER HOWE. $1.50.
28. THE EDUCATION OF THE GREEK PEOPLE. By THOMAS DAVIDSON. $1.50.
29. THE EVOLUTION OF THE MASSACHUSETTS PUBLIC-SCHOOL SYSTEM. By G. H. MARTIN, A.M. $1.50.
30. PEDAGOGICS OF THE KINDERGARTEN. By FRIEDRICH FROEBEL. 12mo. $1.50.
31. THE MOTTOES AND COMMENTARIES OF FRIEDRICH FROEBEL'S MOTHER PLAY. By SUSAN E. BLOW and HENRIETTA R. ELIOT. $1.50.
32. THE SONGS AND MUSIC OF FROEBEL'S MOTHER PLAY. By SUSAN E. BLOW. $1.50.
33. THE PSYCHOLOGY OF NUMBER, AND ITS APPLICATIONS TO METHODS OF TEACHING ARITHMETIC. By JAMES A. MCLELLAN, A.M., and JOHN DEWEY, Ph.D. $1.50.
34. TEACHING THE LANGUAGE-ARTS. SPEECH, READING, COMPOSITION. By B. A. HINSDALE, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor of Science and the Art of Teaching in the University of Michigan. $1.00.
35. THE INTELLECTUAL AND MORAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE CHILD. PART I. CONTAINING CHAPTERS ON PERCEPTION, EMOTION, MEMORY, IMAGINATION, AND CONSCIOUSNESS. By GABRIEL COMPAYRE. Translated from the French by MARY E. WILSON, B.L., Smith College, Member of the Graduate Seminary in Child Study, University of California. $1.50.
36. HERBART'S A B C OF SENSE-PERCEPTION, AND INTRODUCTORY WORKS. By WILLIAM J. ECKOFF, Ph.D., Pd.D., Professor of Pedagogy in the University of Illinois; Author of "Kant's Inaugural Dissertation," $1.50.
37. PSYCHOLOGIC FOUNDATIONS OF EDUCATION. By WILLIAM T. HARRIS, A.M., LL.D. $1.50.
38. THE SCHOOL SYSTEM OF ONTARIO. By the Hon. GEO. W. ROSS, LL.D., Minister of Education for the Province of Ontario. $1.00.
39. PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF TEACHING. By JAMES JOHONNOT. $1.50
40. SCHOOL MANAGEMENT AND SCHOOL METHODS. By JOSEPH BALDWIN. $1.50.
41. FROEBEL'S EDUCATIONAL LAWS FOR ALL TEACHERS. By JAMES L. HUGHES, Inspector of Schools, Toronto. $1.50.

GEORGE N. MORANG & COMPANY LIMITED
90 Wellington Street West TORONTO

VOL. XLII. BIBLIOGRAPHY OF EDUCATION. By WILL S. MONROE, Professor of Psychology and Pedagogy, State Normal School, Westfield, Mass. $2.00

VOL. XLIII. THE STUDY OF THE CHILD. A Brief Treatise on the Psychology of the Child, with Suggestions for Teachers, Students, and Parents. By ALBERT R. TAYLOR, Ph. D., President of the State Normal School, Emporia, Kansas. $1 25

VOL. XLIV. FRIEDRICH FROEBEL'S EDUCATION BY DEVELOPMENT. The Second Part of the "Pedagogics of the Kindergarten." Translated by JOSEPHINE JARVIS. $1.50

VOL. XLV. LETTERS TO A MOTHER ON THE PHILOSOPHY OF FROEBEL. By SUSAN E. BLOW, author of "Symbolic Education," "Mottoes and Commentaries of Froebel's Mother-Plays," etc. $1.50

VOL. XLVI. MONTAIGNE'S THE EDUCATION OF CHILDREN. Selected, Translated, and Annotated by L. E. RECTOR, Ph. D. $1.00

VOL. XLVII. THE SECONDARY SCHOOL SYSTEM OF GERMANY. By FREDERICK E. BOLTON, Ph. D., Professor of Psychology and Education, State Normal School, Milwaukee, Wis. $1.50,

OTHER VOLUMES IN PREPARATION.

THE STUDY OF CHILDREN AND THEIR SCHOOL TRAINING. By FRANCIS WARNER, M.D., F.R.C.P., F.R.C.S., (Eng.) With an introduction by James L. Hughes, Inspector of Public Schools, Toronto. 12mo., cloth, $1.25.

"This volume is written chiefly for teachers, as it deals with the training of children during the period of school life, but interested and intelligent parents will find it helpful in its acts and recommendations. All true students of childhood will welcome the book. Nearly all the works on child study have been written by educators interested in physiological psychology; Dr. Warner is an eminent physician interested in psychological physiology. **** Dr. Warner's new book will do great service by revealing to teachers their responsibility for brain training and nerve co-ordination. The culture of the mind, and the improvement of the methods by which culture may be communicated and acquired, are not the highest functions of the teacher. The new education includes methods for the development of brain cells, for the perfect co-ordination of the sensor and motor brain, and the extension of nerve connections throughout the body. By these methods the race may be made executive and operative, and thus each individual will become a positive agent in a progressive civilization. This is the true educational ideal."—*From the Introduction by Inspector James L. Hughes.*

MODERN METHODS IN EDUCATION

A Modern English Grammar

By HUBER GRAY BUEHLER

This book is an attempt to present the grammar of modern English in the manner prescribed by modern methods of instruction; and the method adopted cannot fail to commend itself to all progressive teachers as the simplest, most natural, and most conducive to interest in what is apt to be considered the driest of all educational subjects.

PRICE, 75 CENTS

Copies *for examination* mailed free on receipt of 40 cents.

GEORGE N. MORANG & COMPANY LIMITED

90 Wellington Street West TORONTO

Morang's
20th Century Educational Series

Morang's
Illustrated Classical Series

This new series, prepared by accomplished scholars of great practical experience in teaching, is distinguished by several important features for the first time introduced into Canadian text-books.

Scope.—Each volume is complete in itself, containing biographical, historical, and (where suitable) critical introduction, text, notes, appendices, specimen translations and hints on translation, English exercises for retranslation, and vocabularies.

Introduction.—The great aim is to make the introductions thoroughly readable and interesting.

Illustrations.—The illustrations are mainly authentic drawings from coins, gems, statues, and other objects of ancient art. They are of real value as familiarizing the pupil with results of archæological research. Maps and plans are provided.

Notes.—The notes, besides explaining simply all difficulties in style or allusion, aim at interesting the pupil in the subject matter.

Appendices.—Textual and other criticism beyond the attainments of the average pupil, but useful to the master, is given in appendices.

Translations.—Wherever standard literary translations are available, a specimen is given; this is especially serviceable in the case of poets. In other cases hints on translation are given.

Retranslation Exercises.—Each of the prose books contains exercises for retranslation, carefully compiled so as to practice the pupil in the vocabulary and the constructions of the text.

Vocabulary.—Each volume has a complete vocabulary.

Price.—Each volume is sold at the unprecedented low price of **35 cents.**

The following volumes are now nearly ready:

LATIN

Virgil—Aeneid. Book I.
Virgil—Aeneid. Book II.
Cornelius Nepos. Lives of Themistocles, Aristides and Hannibal
Cæsar's Gallic War. Book I.
Cæsar's Gallic War. Books IV. and V.
Cæsar's Invasions of Britain.
Cicero—The First Catiline Oration.

GREEK

Xenophon's Anabasis. Book I.

OTHER VOLUMES IN PREPARATION.

Specimen copies mailed free on receipt of price.

☞ Send for *Morang's Educational List.*

GEORGE N. MORANG & COMPANY LIMITED
90 Wellington Street West TORONTO

Series

3

eat practical
features for

al, historical,
ces, specimen
retranslation,

s thoroughly

rs from coins,
real value as
. Maps and

le or allusion,

ments of the
es.
available, a
of poets. In

ains exercises
pupil in the

5 cents.

nnibal'

TED

GALLIA
BRITANNIA
CENIMAGNI
CASSI
TRINOVANTES
ANCALITES
SECONTIACI
BIBROCI
CANTIUM
FRETUM GALLICUM
MORINI
BATAVI
MENAPII
CEUTRONES
AMBIVARITI
EBUROWES
NERVII
GRUDII
PLEUMOXII
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
CALETI
VELIOCASSI
BELLOVACI
SUESSIONES
Bratuspantium
Noviodunum
EBUROVICES
LEXOVII
ESUVII
CORIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
DIABLINTES
PARISII
Lutetia
MELDI
Metiosedum
SENONES
CARNUTES
Vellaunodunum
Agedincum
LINGONES
REDONES
CENOMANI
VENETI
ANDES
NAMNETES
Cenabum
Noviodunum
BITURIGES
AMBILIATI
MANDUBII
Alesia
Vesontio
PICTONES
Lemonum
Avaricum
Bibracte
Gergovia
Decetia
Cavillonum
BOI
LEMOVICES
SAMNONI
Genabum
SEGUSIAVI
Vienna
PETROCORII
ELEUTETI
Uxellodunum
VELLAVII
Durapius
NITIOBRIGES
GABALI
VOCATES
SOTIATES
AQUITANIA
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
VOLCAE
ARECOMICI
Arelate
Narbo
Carcaso
TARBELLI
PTIANII
BIGERRIONES
ARUNCI
CONSORANNI
CANTABRI
HISPANIA
Roman Miles
Greenwich

Rhenus F.
BATAVI
USIPETES
CHERUSCI
MENAPII
CEUTRONES
AMSIVARITI
TENCTERI
EBURONES
SUGAMBRI
GERMANIA SUPERIOR
Hercynia Silva
NERVII
LEVACI
TREVERI
Arduenna Silva
SEGNI
CAEMANI
VIROMANDUI
SUESSIONES
Bibrax
Durocortorum
MEDIOMATRICI
LEUCI
NEMETES
VANGIONES
SEDUSII
MARCOMANNI
GERMANIA
Mons
TRIBOCI
LINGONES
LATOBRIGI
Danubius F.
HELVETII
TULINGI
Vesontio
SEQUANI
Mons Jura
HELVERBICA
Lacus
Genua
Octodurus
Matisco
Aul. BRANNOVICES
SEGUSIANI
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
CEUTRONES
GRAIOCELI
Ocelum
Mediolanium
Vercellae
Ticinus F.
Padus
Placentia
GALLIA CISALPINA
CATURIGES
Genua
Ravenna
M. Adriaticum
Appenninus Mons
Pisae
Aquileia
Arelate
Agusae Sextiae
Massana
Mare Nostrum
CORSICA
Roma
A
B
C
D
E
50
48
46
44
42
4
6
8
10
12
14
16